

Міністерство освіти і науки України
Дніпровський національний університет імені Олеся Гончара

ENGLISH ADVANCED GRAMMAR EXERCISE COLLECTION
(INTERVAL DISTANT LEARNING)

Грамматика англійської мови: поглиблене вивчення

Навчальний посібник

Дніпро
2023

Міністерство освіти і науки України
Дніпровський національний університет імені Олеся Гончара
Факультет української й іноземної філології та мистецтвознавства
Кафедра перекладу та лінгвістичної підготовки іноземців

Олена Панченко
Поліна Горелова
Марина Вотінцева
Ірина Муляр
Катерина Шевчик

**ENGLISH ADVANCED GRAMMAR EXERCISE COLLECTION
(INTERVAL DISTANT LEARNING)**

Граматика англійської мови: поглиблене вивчення

Навчальний посібник

Дніпро
ДНУ
2023

УДК 811.111'36 : 378.147](07)

Г75

*Рекомендовано до друку на засіданні вченої ради
факультету української й іноземної філології та мистецтвознавства
Дніпровського національного університету імені Олеся Гончара
(протокол № 4 від 21.11. 2023 року)*

Рецензенти:

Зірка В. В. – доктор філологічних наук, завідувачка Дніпропетровського відділення Центру наукових досліджень та викладання іноземних мов Національної академії наук України

Клименко Т. А. – кандидат філологічних наук, доцент кафедри перекладу та лінгвістичної підготовки іноземців Дніпровського національного університету імені Олеся Гончара

Г75 Панченко О. І., Горелова П. В., Вотінцева М. Л., Муляр І. В., Шевчик К. Ю. **Граматика англійської мови: поглиблене вивчення (для інтервального дистанційного навчання):** Навчальний посібник. Дніпро: Ліра, 2023. 252 с.

Видання призначене для самостійної або аудиторної дистанційної роботи під час вивчення граматики основної іноземної мови (англійської). Навчальний посібник розрахований на два семестри, кожен розділ містить вправи для набуття знань з англійської граматики.

Для здобувачів вищої освіти за першим (бакалаврським) рівнем усіх спеціальностей Дніпровського національного університету імені Олеся Гончара, які навчаються за освітньою програмою «Переклад з англійської та німецької мов».

УДК 811.111'36 : 378.147](07)

Видано власним коштом

© Панченко О.І., 2023

ЗМІСТ

Передмова	4
Part 1.	
Theme 1.1 Article	6
Theme 1.2. Prepositions	14
Theme 1.3 Present Tenses. Continuous-Non-Continuous Verbs	21
Theme 1.4 Past Tenses. Emphatic Structures	29
Theme 1.5 Future Actions. Real Conditionals	36
Theme 1.6 Sequence of Tenses. Indirect Speech	45
Theme 1.7 Passive Voice. Have Something Done	52
Theme 1.8 Modals	59
Theme 1.9 Non-Finite Forms. Modals with Perfect Infinitive	67
Theme 1.10 Infinitive Verb Patterns	75
Theme 1.11 Complex Object. Complex Subject	82
Theme 1.12 Infinitives Vs Ing-Forms	89
Theme 1.13 Participles. Absolute Constructions. Comparison of -Ing Forms	97
Theme 1.14 Revision	106
Part 2	
Theme 2.1 Conditional Mood	111
Theme 2.2 Suppositional Mood	120
Theme 2.3 Subjunctive Mood	129
Theme 2.4 Adjective. Adverb. Degrees of Comparison	137
Theme 2.5 Noun. Plurals. Possessives	148
Theme 2.6 Pronouns	157
Theme 2.7 Linking Words and Clauses of Time, Purpose and Result	169
Theme 2.8 Linking Words. Clauses of Concession, Reason	180
Theme 2.9 Relative Clauses	188
Theme 2.10 Questions and Answers	198
Theme 2.11 Emphatic Structures. Exclamations	207
Theme 2.12 Punctuation	215
Theme 2.13 Miscellaneous	227
Theme 2.14 Revision. Final test	241
References	251

ПЕРЕДМОВА

Іноземна мова, англійська зокрема, є обов'язковим компонентом змісту вищої освіти. Її вивчення сприяє розвитку компетенцій з усіх видів мовленнєвої діяльності – читання, говоріння, аудіювання, письма. Запропонований посібник базується на сучасній методиці інтервального повторення (Spaced Repetition System, скорочено – SRS). Перші дослідження інтервального ефекту були проведені в 1965 р. дослідниками Д. Аусубелем і М. Юссефом. Подальші дослідження мали на меті показати, що SRS можна ефективно використовувати не лише для вивчення іноземної мови, а й для будь-якої навчальної дисципліни. Освітні ресурси SRS центруються навколо двох аспектів: інтервальне повторення і перевірка знань за допомогою тестів. Інтервальне повторення – це техніка запам'ятовування, що базується на принципі повторення матеріалу через визначені інтервали часу, які поступово стають усе довгими. Метод поширився після досліджень механізмів пам'яті та процесу забування німецького психолога Германа Еббінгауса (Літінська, 2017).

Посібник становить собою поглиблений курс головних розділів граматики англійської мови (система часів, неособові форми дієслова (інфінітив, дієприкметник, герундій) тощо), які викликають значні труднощі у студентів під час навчання. Зазначений граматичний матеріал подано ється в поєднанні з тренувальними вправами, які спрямовані на аналіз та відпрацювання, закріплення вивченого граматичного матеріалу і сконцентровані за принципом інтервального повторення.

Граматичний матеріал подано в стислому викладенні і за оригінальною схемою, оскільки передбачено його повторення, а не первинне вивчення. Кожний розділ складається з попереднього пояснення граматичного матеріалу, відповідних прикладів та комплексу тренувальних вправ. Після вивчення курсу студенти повинні знати і вміти: – володіти граматичними конструкціями та матеріалом, наданими в посібнику, а саме: вміти вживати інфінітив, дієприкметник, герундій; – читати і перекладати тексти, де наявні інфінітив, дієприкметник, герундій для необхідної інформації, знати граматичний матеріал, який охоплює основні правила морфології та синтаксису і дає змогу правильно розуміти та продукувати власний іншомовний текст; реалізувати комунікативні наміри співрозмовника в типових ситуаціях повсякденного та професійного спілкування.

THEME 1.1. ARTICLE

Theoretical background. Grammar Way-4, pp.62-63. Підручник Л. Г. Верби, с.141-154. Round-up-6, pp. 166-170. In Use, Units 72-78.

I. Entrance test

1. You ... write and thank Aunt Louise for your present.
A must B need C have
2. No announcement ... about the results so far.
A has made B has been made C was made
3. He ... his teeth checked once every six months.
A is having B has had C has
4. You ... wear a coat. It is very warm outside.
A must B needn't C could
5. I can't come to the cinema tonight. I ...work.
A could B needn't C have to
6. The children are at ... school at the moment.
A - B a C the
7. She got ... of presents on her birthday.
A several B a great deal C a great number
8. I brush my teeth twice ... day.
A a B the C one
9. The play was said ... because the lead actor was ill.
A to be cancelled B to have been cancelled C to have cancelled
10. He was very nervous. He ... for this moment all his life.
A had waited B had been waiting C has been waiting
11. The advice you gave me ... really useful.
A were B are C was
12. I have read ... interesting article in the newspaper today.
A a B an C the
13. No information ... to the new staff yet.
A has given B has been given C was given
14. It's late. Mark ... have forgotten about the meeting.
A might B will C ought
15. He ... be at work. His car isn't outside his house.
A would B can't C must
- 16...we have lunch in the garden today?
A Shall B Mustn't C Would
17. Sam ... carry the box. It was too heavy.
A couldn't B could C can't
18. We ... go shopping because we had plenty of food.
A needn't have B didn't need to C need to

19. The news ... at six o'clock last night.
A announced B were announced C was announced
20. ... you help me with my homework, please?
A Will B Shall C Must
21. He seemed ... all the friendliness he had shown at our previous meeting.
A to loose B to be lost C to have lost D to have been losing
22. I returned to my room one afternoon ... Rex waiting for me.
A finding B to find C having found D to have found
23. They went off, ... us to face the situation.
A living B having left C to be leaving D to leave
24. I didn't mind ... about them a bit.
A to be thinking B to think C thinking D having thought
25. Then he condescended ... himself.
A explaining B being explained C to have explained D to explain
26. I remember ... for a drive by a kind lady who wanted to show me round.
A being taken B taking C to have taken D to be taken
27. He began ... the draught of a new plan that afternoon, just to see how it looks.
A writing B being written C to write D to be writing
28. El was still not sure why he had called up, but he felt better for ... so.
A being done B having done C having been done D doing
29. The man of letters is accustomed ... writing.
A of B in C about D to
30. Some people were nice ... turning me down.
A in B about C of D to

The shortest possible survey of article

Загальне правило: обчислюваний іменник в однині має бути з артиклем або зі словом, яке його замінює – my, his, some, five etc.

Невизначений артикль

За походженням – від слова один, тому не може використовуватися в множині. Має дві форми – AN перед голосним, A перед приголосним
ЗВУКОМ: an MP; a UFO.

Основні випадки вживання:

Артикль А.

1. Перший раз згаданий предмет (якийсь) – I have a cat.
2. Значення "один" – She bought a pair of shoes.
3. Професія, рід занять – He is a doctor.
4. 1 з родини – He is a real Brown.
5. Абстрактний іменник з означенням – He had a happy childhood.
6. В окличних реченнях – What a story!
7. В конструкції THERE IS – There is a book on the table.

Article THE

1. Особа або предмет, що виділяється з класу інших (найвищий ступінь порівняння, порядковий числівник, нерідко з прийменником of) – This is the book I told about.
2. Згадані особа або предмет – I have a cat. The cat is black.
3. Єдиний предмет у своєму роді – the sun, the sky, the earth, the moon.
4. Невід’ємна частина ситуації – He entered a room. The walls were white.
5. Вся родина – The Browns were at home.
6. Субстантивований прикметник (в ролі іменника) – The young, the rich
7. Ріки, вода, гори (крім однієї вершини та одного озера) the Thames, the Atlantic.
8. Країни з загальним компонентом або у множині, the United Kingdom, the Netherlands, готелі, театри, музеї, газети, частини світу
9. Навчальні заклади з першим загальним словом – the University of Florida
10. Музичні інструменти – to play the piano
11. Назва мови зі словом language – the English language
12. Сполучення the police, the fire-brigade, the army, the post-office, the doctor, the dentist, in the country, the cinema, the theatre, the radio
13. Загальна назва виду рослин, тварин, винаходів, жанру літератури – The tragedy appeared in ancient Greece.
14. Сполучення some of, many of, the right, the left, the wrong, the very, the only, the late

Zero Article

1. Слова в множині, якщо в однині потрібен невизначений артикль – These are trees.
2. Власне ім’я зі званням, титулом, спорідненістю – Professor Smith
3. Абстрактні іменники – happiness
4. Континенти, штати, міста, вулиці, майдани, мости, планети, одне озеро, одна гора, аеропорти, журнали (but: the Hague)
5. School, university, prison, church, hospital – якщо лише виконує функцію, нас не цікавить приміщення.
6. Після займенників, числівників – my leg, two people, room five
7. Спорт, свята, танці – to play football
8. Університети, назва яких починається з географічної назви Liverpool University
9. Сполучення television, meals, at home, in bed, at work, by bus, train..., on foot

Video explanations

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ryRu8zFCKZE>

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=3zJQoQLCeNo>

Exercise 1. Put in the or a/an where necessary. If the sentence is already correct, put 'RIGHT'

1. Sun is star.
2. Tim lives in small village in country.
3. Moon goes round earth every 27 days.
4. What is highest mountain in world?
5. I'm fed up with doing same thing every day.
6. It was very hot day. It was hottest day of year.
7. I don't usually have lunch but I always eat good breakfast.
8. If you live in foreign country, you should try and learn language.
9. We missed our train because we were waiting on wrong platform.

Exercise 2. Put in a/an or the or 0

1. This morning I bought ... newspaper and ... magazine ...newspaper is in my bag but I don't know where I put ... magazine.
2. I saw ... accident this morning ...car crashed into ... tree. ... driver of ... car wasn't hurt but ... car was badly damaged.
3. There are two cars parked outside: ... blue one and ... grey one. ... blue one belongs to my neighbours; I don't know who ... owner of ... grey one is.
4. This house is very nice. Has it got ... garden? It's a beautiful day. Let's sit in ...garden.
5. Would you like ...apple?
6. How often do you go to ... dentist?
7. Could you close ... door, please?
8. I'm sorry. I didn't mean to do that. It was ...mistake.
9. Excuse me, where is ... bus station, please?
10. I've got ...problem. Can you help me?
11. I'm just going to ...post office. I won't be long
12. There were no chairs, so we had to sit on ... floor.
13. Have you finished with book I lent you?
14. My sister has just got ...job in ...bank inManchester.
15. We live in ...small flat near ...city centre.
16. There's ...small supermarket at ...end of ...street I live in.

Exercise 3. Put in a/an or the or 0

United Kingdom of ... Great Britain and ... Northern Ireland is situated on ... British Isles, the largest of which are... Britain and ... Ireland. ... British Isles are separated from ... continental Europe by ... North Sea and English Channel,... narrowest part of which, ... Strait of Dover |is 33 kms wide. In ...west ... British Isles are washed by ... Atlantic Ocean. ...Irish Sea separates ... Great Britain from ... Ireland. ...United Kingdom consists of ... England, ... Wales, ... Scotland ... Northern Ireland. ...Northern part of ... island of ... Great Britain (...Scotland) is occupied by ... mountains which are called ... Highlands of... Northern Scotland and ... Southern Uplands with Central Lowland of ... Scotland between them. Highlands of Northern Scotland are divided into ... Northwestern Highlands and ... Grampians. ... highest mountain Sit Britain is ... Ben Nevis; it is situated in ...Grampians. ...Pennines are ... mountains situated in ... central part of... island of... Great Britain, ... Pennines are separated from ...Southern Uplands by ... valley of ... River Tyne. ...Tyne flows into ... North Sea.

Wales is ... mountainous part of ... Great Britain. It is occupied by... Cambrians. ... highest mountain in ... Cambrians is... Snowdon. ...longest river in ... Great Britain is ... Severn. It rises in ...Cambrians and flows into ... Bristol Channel. ...Thames in not so long as ... Severn but it is ... most important river in ... Great Britain. ... London, ... capital of ...United Kingdom, is situated on ... Thames.

Exercise 4. Use correct articles

For ... breakfast I have ... coffee with ... milk and ... sugar. I have ... jam, too. There are ... different things on ... dinner-table. There is ... bread, ... butter and ... ham. There are ... cups and ... glasses there. There is ... jug on ... table. ... milk in ... jug is hot. There is ... tea-pot on ... table. There is ... tea in ... tea-pot. ... tea is hot, too. There are ... plates, ... forks and ... knives on ... table. 2. ... lamp is on ... table. 3. There is ... lamp on ... table. 4. Is there ... lamp on ... table? 5. Is ... lamp on ... table? 6. Is there ... clock on ... wall? 7. There are two ... shelves on ... wall. 8. Where are ... shelves? — ... shelves are on ... wall. 9. They have ... large flat. There are ... four rooms in ... flat. 10. Is ... newspaper on ... table? 11. Is there ... newspaper on ... table? 12. There is ... butter on ... plate. 13. Where is ... butter? ... butter is on ... little plate. 14. There is ... white and ... brown bread on ... table.

Once there lived ... man who was very fond of ... gold. He used to say: "While I have my gold, I am ... happiest man in ... world." And so all his life he saved ... money. One day he was travelling in ... desert of ... North Africa. He lost his way. He had no ... food or ... water. He was almost dying of ... hunger. He was so weak that he could not walk, he could only crawl. ... heat was terrible. There were only ... stones and ... sand around. Just then he saw ... bag lying on ... sand. He hoped that he would find ... food in it and ... water, too, He crawled up to ... bag and opened it. He saw that ... bag was full of ... gold. What is ... use of ... gold to ... hungry man in ... desert? He left ... bag on ... hot sand, crying bitterly: "I am ... most unhappy man in ... world."

Once there lived ... king. His name was Midas. He had ... little daughter. They lived in ... beautiful palace with ... wonderful garden around it. Now ... king was very fond of ... gold. He loved ... gold more than anything else in ... world. One day, when ... king was looking at his gold, ... young man appeared before him. "You are ... very rich man, Midas," said ... young man. "Yes," said ... king, "but I would like to be richer. I would like to have ... golden touch. I want everything that I touch to turn into ... gold." ... young man was ... magician, and he gave ... king ... golden touch which he wanted to have. ... king was very happy. He touched ... table, and ... table became gold. He went into ... garden. There were ... beautiful roses in ... garden. He touched ... roses, and they also became gold. ... king's daughter, who loved ... roses very much, saw it and began to cry.

"Don't cry, ... dear daughter," said ... king and touched his daughter's head. ... next moment ... girl turned into ... beautiful gold statue.

Three men came to ... New York for ... holiday. They came to ... very large hotel and took ... room there. Their room was on ... forty-fifth floor. In ... evening ... friends went to ... theatre and came back to ... hotel very late. "I am very sorry," said... clerk of ... hotel, "but ... lifts do not work tonight. If you don't want to walk up to your room, we shall make ... beds for you in ... hall." "No, no," said one of ... friends, "no, thank you. We don't want to sleep in ... hall. We shall walk up to our room." Then he turned to his friends and said: "It is not easy to walk up to ... forty-fifth floor, but we shall make it easier. On ... way to ... room I shall tell you some jokes; then you, Andy, will sing us some songs; then you, Peter, will tell us some interesting stories." So they began walking up to their room. Tom told them many jokes; Andy sang some songs. At last they came to ... thirty sixth floor. They were tired and decided to have ... rest. "Well," said Tom, "now it is your turn, Peter. After all ... jokes, I would like to hear ... sad story. Tell us ... long and interesting story with ... sad end." "... story which I am going to tell you," said Peter, "is sad enough. We left ... key to our room in ... hall."

Exercise 5. Preposition *on, in* або *into*

1. Where is the book? — It is ... the table. 2. Where is the tea? — It is ... the cup. 3. Put the plates ... the table. 4. Put the book ... the bag. 5. There is a beautiful picture ... the wall. 6. He went ... the room. 7. I like to sit ... the sofa ... my room. 8. Mother is cooking dinner ... the kitchen. 9. She went ... the room and sat down ... the sofa. 10. There are many people ... the park today. 11. There is a girl standing ... the bridge. Why is she crying? — She has dropped her doll ... the water. 12. There is no tea ... my cup. 13. Pour some tea ... my cup. 14. Put these flowers ... the window-sill. 15. I saw many people ... the platform waiting for the train. 16. We went ... the garden and sat down ... a bench. 17. The teacher hung a picture ... the blackboard. 18. I opened the door and went ... the classroom. The teacher was writing some words ... the blackboard. The pupils were writing these words ... their exercise-books. There were some books and pens ... the teacher's table. There were two maps ... the wall and some flowers ... the window-sills. I saw a pen ... the floor. I picked it up and put it ... the table. 19. He put his hand ... his pocket, took out a letter and dropped it ... the mail-box which hung ... the wall of the house. Then he got ... his car and drove off.

Exercise 6. Tenses: *Present Perfect, Present Simple, Present Continuous, Past Simple* или *Past Continuous*

1. They (to go) to the museum last week. 2. They (to be) to the museum twice this week. 3. After school yesterday he (to come) home, (to have) dinner, (to read) an article from the latest magazine and (to begin) doing his homework. 4.

When your friend (to return) from the south? — She (to return) yesterday. — You (to go) to the station to meet her? — No, I..., I (to be) too busy. 5. With whom you (to discuss) this question yesterday? 6. I (to see) this film this week. I like it very much. 7. When I (to enter) the kitchen, I (to see) that my mother (to stand) at the table and (to cut) some cabbage. She (to cook) dinner. 8. As soon as I (to hear) a cry, I (to run) out of the room and (to see) that a child (to lie) on the ground and (to cry). "What (to happen)? Why you (to cry)? You (to hurt) yourself?" I asked. 9. As soon as I (to see) him, I (to understand) that he (to work) hard. He (to write) something and (not to notice) anything. 10. When I (to come) home yesterday, the children (to run) and (to sing) merrily. "We (to learn) a new song!" they cried. 11. When the young man (to enter) the room, she (to look) at him in surprise. "What you (to want) to tell me?" she (to say). "Why you (to come)?" 12. It (to rain) hard when I (to leave) home yesterday, so I (to return), (to put) on my raincoat and (to start) again. 13. Your brother (to return) from the north? — Yes, he (to come) a few days ago. 14. You (to be) to London? When you (to be) there? — I (to be) there in 2019. 15. Where (to be) your brother? — He just (to come) home. He (to take) a shower in the bathroom now.

Homework

Dear Nicole,

Hi. How are you? My family and I just came back from Japan and we had such 1) ... fantastic time! Japan is 2) ... extraordinary country rich in culture and tradition. We stayed at 3) ... traditional Japanese hotel in 4) ... Asakusa. This gave us the chance to experience Japanese customs and taste 5) ...local cuisine. Luckily, our hotel was only 6) fifteen-minute walk from 7) ...city centre. Tokyo is 8) city full of modern architecture. First, we went to 9) Tokyo Tower from where we had 10) wonderful view of the city. Next, we went to 11) Tokyo National Museum which has 12) ... enormous collection of Japanese Art. On the last day, we went shopping. Shopping is 13) ... extremely popular activity in Tokyo and not just for 14) travellers.

Well, that's all my news. Write back soon.

Additional exercise 1. Use Articles

I play ... football team who have won ...World Cup ... most times. It is ...Brazil. They have won ...competition four times....team also hold ... record for ... greatest number of ... goals scored overall and have played in every one of ... tournament's finals. ... tallest man in ... world was born in ... USA in 1918. When in ... Rome, do as ... Romans do. Where there's ... will there's ...way. You can't teach ... old dog... new tricks. You can't get ... blood out of... stone. You cannot make... omelette without breaking ... eggs.more you getmore you want. ...more,....merrier.home is where.... heart is. ... Fire is good servant but....bad master.

Additional exercise 2. Use Articles

1. Is this ... interesting book? Is this ... very interesting book? Is this ... very interesting book you have spoken about so much? It is such ... interesting book. Is it ... same book you have recommended to us? 2. She is ... teacher. She is ... good teacher. She is ... teacher of our school. She is ... teacher of ... English. Here is ... teacher, ask her about ... question which interests you. 3. There is ... word in ... text which I cannot understand. There is... very difficult word, too, which I cannot pronounce. Here is ... word I was looking up in the dictionary. This word is ... adverb. 4. ... first men were vegetarians. 5. Serfdom was abolished in ... 19th century. 6. Columbus, who discovered ... America, was ... native of ... Genoa. 7. ... Rome is ... ancient town. 8. ... Ireland, ... Scotland and ... Wales are parts of ... United Kingdom.

Revision test

1. Peter likes to drink coffee / the coffee in the morning.
2. Jim enjoys listening to radio / the radio in the evenings.
3. Teenagers / The teenagers usually like playing video games.
4. I would love to travel to Australia / the Australia.
5. Roald Amundsen was the first person to reach the South Pole/South Pole.
6. James plays basketball / the basketball twice a week.
7. You cut the cake / cake and I'll pour tea / the tea.
8. Children / The children have gone to the playground .
9. Life / The life was very different 100 years ago.
10. Nathan is learning to play violin / the violin.

THEME 1.2. PREPOSITIONS

Theoretical background. Підручник Л.Г.Верби, с.177-179. In Use, Units 121-136.

Review

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CvUovAi9eQU&ab_channel=Burhanpeynirci

Revision

Exercise 1. Use correct article

Looking for 1) ...exciting destination for your next holiday? Well, why not visit 2) America's Aloha State - beautiful Hawaii ? Hawaii is 3) ... group of islands located in the middle of 4) ...Pacific Ocean. The islands are famous for their natural beauty including 5) ... large number of volcanoes, some of which are still active today. 6) ... Mount Kilauea, for example, which is located within 7) ... Hawaii Volcanoes National Park, had 8) ... small eruption in 2008. Because of its amazing landscape Hawaii has become 9) popular tourist destination for 10) mountaineers and hikers. But Hawaii has much more to offer than just its natural beauty. Many visitors come to Hawaii to go 11) ... surfing or try other water activities. You can also experience Hawaii's rich culture around the island. In 12) Honolulu, 13) capital city, you can admire local art at 14) Hawaii State Art Museum or find out about Hawaii 's history at 15) ... Bishop Museum. Afterwards, if you fancy 16) ... open-air shopping centre, go to the Ala Moana Center. It's 17) ...largest of its kind in the world, and you can pick up some interesting souvenirs there. Wherever you are in Hawaii, you can be sure of 18) warm welcome from 19) ... Hawaiian people. Often, locals perform 20) ...hula, a Hawaiian dance, for visitors, and everyone is given a lei, 21) ... beautiful necklace made from flowers.

Exercise 2. Choose correct words

Are you trying to organise 1) some / a perfect party? If so, you've come to 2) the / - right place! At PartyTown we sell a huge variety of decorations for 3) many / much different types of parties. We also have a great 4) number / deal of invitations available. We believe that 5) an / some invitation should not just be a 6) sheet / bit of paper stuffed into an envelope! All our invitations are made from 7) a / the best materials and are designed by 8) the / - highly skilled artists. We cater for any occasion you can name, 9) child's / children's parties being our specialty. So come to PartyTown today. It's 10) the / a only party shop you'll need to visit!

Exercise 3. Choose correct answer

1. Is ... Rome ... capital of ...Italy? A Yes B No. 2. Is ... Sicily in ... Mediterranean Sea? A Yes B No. 3. Is Lake Garda in ... Italy? A Yes B No .

4. Does ...Pope live in ... Vatican City? A Yes B No. 5. Is ... Bridge of Sighs in ... Venice? A Yes B No. 6. Where are ... Alps? A In .. central Italy B In ... northern Italy. 7 Which ancient language does Italian language come from? A Latin B Greek. 8 Tarantella is a famous dance from south of Italy. A True B False

Video explanations

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=byszemY8Pl8&ab_channel=TheBazillions

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gN5HOpQDkOA&ab_channel=EnglishwithLucy

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HRZZIwIHeUM&ab_channel=NehirShah

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sN5H7YToIQ&ab_channel=ENGLISHwithJames%C2%B7engVid

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2N0uPL6RiQ&ab_channel=LingportalOnlineSchoolofEnglish

Exercise 1. Complete the sentences with in, at or on (place)

1. Write your name *at* the top of the page. 2. I like that picture hanging ... the wall the kitchen. 3. There was an accident ... the crossroads this morning. 4. I wasn't sure whether I had come to the right office. There was no name ...the door. 5. ...the end of the street there is a path leading to the river. 6. You'll find the sports results ...the back page of the newspaper. 7. I wouldn't like an office job. I couldn't spend the whole day sitting ...a desk. 8. My brother lives ...a small village ... the south-west of England. 9. The man the police are looking for has a scar ...his right cheek. 10. The headquarters of the company are ...Milano. 11. Nicola was wearing a silver ring ...her little finger. 12. It can be dangerous when children play ...the street. 13. If you walk to the end of the street, you'll see a small shop ...the corner. 14. Is Tom ...this photograph? I can't find him. 15 My office is the first floor. It's ...the left as you come out of the lift. 16. We normally use the front entrance but there's another entrance ...the back. 17. I love to look up at the stars ...the sky at night. 18. (in a restaurant) 'Where shall we sit?' 'Over there, ...the corner.' 19.. When I'm a passenger in a car, I prefer to sit ...the front. 20. It's a very small village. You probably won't find it ...your map. 21. I didn't see you ...the party on Saturday. Where were you? 22. It was a very slow train. It stopped ...every station. 23. I don't know where my umbrella is. Perhaps I left it ...the bus. 24. Tom is ill. He wasn't ...work today. He was ...home ...bed. 25. Paul lives ...London. He's a student ...London University.

Exercise 2. Put in at, on or in (time)

1. Mozart was born in Salzburg ...1756. 2. I haven't seen Kate for a few days. I last saw her ...Tuesday. 3. The price of electricity is going up ...October. 4. I've been invited to a wedding ...14 February. 5. Hurry up! We've got to go ...five

minutes. 6. I'm busy just now but I'll be with you ...a moment. 7. Jenny's brother is an engineer but he's out of work ...the moment. 8. There are usually a lot of parties...New Year's Eve. 9. I hope the weather will be nice ...the weekend. 10. Saturday night I went to bed ...11 o'clock. 11. I don't like travelling ...night. 12. We travelled overnight to Paris and arrived ...5 o'clock ...the morning. 13. The course begins ...7 January and ends sometime ...April. 14. It was quite a short book and easy to read. I read it ...a day. 15. I might not be at home ...Tuesday morning but I'll probably be there ...the afternoon. 16. My car is being repaired at the garage. It will be ready ...two hours. 17. The telephone and the doorbell rang ...the same time. 18. Mary and Henry always go out for a meal ...their wedding anniversary. 19. I'm going away ...the end of this week. 20. 'I didn't know what to do.' 'Yes, you were in a difficult position. What did you do ... the end?'

Exercise 3. Use prepositions

1. My mother is afraid ... rats. 2. "What do you complain ...?" asked the doctor. 3. Don't enter ... the room. 4. What are you laughing ... ? 5. They did not want to listen ... me. 6. Wait ... me. I'll be back ... a few minutes. 7. Yesterday the teacher spoke ... us about the architecture. 8. My grandmother often complains ... headache. 9. I am sorry, I cannot speak ... you now, the professor is waiting ... me. I must go ... the institute and explain ... him some details ... our work. Come ... the evening, I'll listen ... you very attentively and answer ... all your questions. 10. ... nine o'clock the lecturer entered ... the hall, walked up ... the table, put his bag ... it, looked ... everybody and began his lecture. The lecture, as all the lectures ... this professor, was very interesting, and the students listened ... him with great attention. 11. Turn ... the corner ... the house and look ... the flowers grown ... my mother: aren't they beautiful? 12. He was an excellent pupil, and the teachers never complained ... him. 13. She complained ... feeling bad and could not answer ... the questions ... the teacher. 14. We tried to speak ... him, but he did not want to listen ... us. He did not even look ... us and did not answer ... our questions. 15. Your brother complains ... you. He says you always laugh ... him, never speak ... him and never answer ... his questions. 16. When I entered ... the room, everybody looked ... me with surprise: they had not waited ... me. 17. At the end ... the street she turned ... the corner, walked ... the bus-stop and began waiting ... the bus.

Exercise 4. Complete the sentences using a preposition (to/at/in etc.) + one of the following words:

bed home hospital prison school university work

You can use the words more than once.

1. Two people were injured in the accident and were taken to hospital.
2. In Britain, children from the age of five have to go ...
3. Mark didn't go out last night. He stayed ...

4. I'll have to hurry. I don't want to be late ...
5. There is a lot of traffic in the morning when everybody is going ...
6. Cathy's mother has just had an operation. She is still ...
7. When Julia leaves school, she wants to study economics ...
8. Bill never gets up before 9 o'clock. It's 8.30 now, so he is still ...
9. If you commit a serious crime, you could be sent ...

Exercise 5. Use tenses: *Present, Past, Future Simple; Present, Past Continuous; Present, Past Perfect*

1. You (to go) for a walk with me? — I (to be) sorry, I can't. I (to do) my homework. I (not yet to write) the English exercise. If you (to wait) for me, I (to go) with you in half an hour. I (to want) to go for a walk very much, because I (not to go) for a walk yesterday. 2. Don't go to Nick's place now, he (to work). He (to finish) his homework at seven o'clock. If you (to come) after seven, he (to be) very glad. 3. Pete (to go) to the cinema? — Yes, I (to think) so. He usually (to play) in the yard at this time, and now he (not to be) there. 4. He (to read) a book at five o'clock yesterday. 5. Yesterday they (to do) all their homework before mother (to come) home, and when she (to come), they (to play) with the cat. 6. I (to lose) my key when I (to play) in the yard yesterday. 7. Ring me up as soon as you (to come) home. 8. Where you usually (to take) books for reading?

Homework. Insert *at, by, in, on, out of, off, under, to, with, for, from, about, for, from*

Nice ...meet you. Don't be late ...school? You ^{were} the new student ...Portugal. Are you a teacher ...this school? Jessica is ...vacation. She is ...Italy now. What is this called ...English? Look ...the flowers. Adam's birthday is ...July. Don't run ...the classroom. Compare your answers ...your partner. This key holder is very special ...me. Kittens and mice are ...the same place. Write ...me soon. Have you got a piece ...paper? What's that CD for? It is ...my exam. I'm tall, ...black hair and brown eyes. We have got a house ...a big garden. I come...a big family. Match the pictures ...the names. Is your house ...the country? Guess. What do I have ...my hand? I have got two pens. What ...you? She wrote the report ...hand, as the computer wasn't working. You look worried. What's ...your mind? ...Tim's surprise, his boss gave him a bonus. Passengers must check in ...arrival at the airport. He's saving money...a view to buying a car. Don't worry, he got everything...control. He was...breath after running for ten minutes. I think I'll have a sandwich ...the second thoughts, I'll have a salad. Steve has not been...touch with us recently. We must put out the fire...all costs. People living in developing countries are ...need of our help. Where have you been? I've been waiting...ages. James is...a bad mood today.

Additional exercise 1. Complete the sentences. Use in, at or on + one of the following:

sea hospital bed the station the cinema the plane school prison the airport the Sports Centre

1. My train arrives at 11.30. Can you meet me ...
2. I didn't feel very well when I woke up, so I stayed ...
3. I think I'd like to see a film. What's on ...this week?
4. Some people are ...for crimes that they did not commit.
5. 'What does your sister do? Has she got a job?' 'No, she's still ...
6. I play basketball ...on Friday evenings.
7. A friend of mine was injured in an accident a few days ago. She's still ...
8. Our flight was delayed. We had to wait ...for four hours.
9. I enjoyed the flight but the food ...wasn't very nice.
10. Bill works on ships. He is away ...most of the time.

Additional exercise 2. Write sentences using got into/out of/on/off

1. You were walking home. A friend passed you in her car. She saw you, stopped and offered you a lift. She opened the door. What did you do? I got into the car.
2. You were waiting for the bus. At last your bus came. The doors opened. What did you do then? I ...
3. You drove home in your car. You arrived at your house and parked the car. What did you do then?
4. You were travelling by train to Manchester. When the train got to Manchester, what did you do?
5. You needed a taxi. After a few minutes a taxi stopped for you. You opened the door. What did you do then?
6. You were travelling by air. At the end of your flight the plane landed at the airport and stopped. The doors were opened, you took your bag and stood up. What did you do then?

Revision test

1. The hurricane blew ...many trees and electric poles.
A. up
B. over
C. down
2. Do you think your horse can jump ...this obstacle?
A. over
B. down
C. up
3. Why are you standing? Sit _____, please.
A. down
B. on
C. in
4. I asked you to throw these trousers _____.

- A. away
 B. back
 C. in
5. The representative of the company handed ...advertising brochures.
 A. off
 B. back
 C. out
6. The river flowed ...an hour ago.
 A. over
 B. under
 C. up
7. Has the six thirty train come ...yet?
 A. in
 B. on
 C. away
8. Nice to see you again. Come ..., please.
 A. over
 B. in
 C. round
9. It is raining. We must let the cat ...
 A. on
 B. in
 C. back
10. Where am I to knock the nail ...?
 A. on
 B. under
 C. in
11. He cannot get ...The room is locked.
 A. over
 B. out
 C. on
12. He used to have a fine collection of stamps but he has given it ...
 A. away
 B. out
 C. off
13. Has he paid ... the money he owes you?
 A. away
 B. back
 C. in
14. I cannot see the time. Turn the clock ...please.
 A. over
 B. inside
 C. round

15. She picked ... the glass and put it ... immediately for the tea was very hot.
A. up; down
B. on; out
C. out; over
16. I do not want to stay here any more. Let's go ...
A. up
B. away
C. over
17. It is very hot here. You'd better take your jacket ...
A. over
B. off
C. out
18. After a quarrel with his father Sid ran ...from home.
A. away
B. down
C. out
19. Don't spend too much time there. Come ...as soon as possible.
A. back
B. in
C. over
20. It is cold. You'd better put your gloves ...
A. up ?
B. over?
C. On?

THEME 1.3. PRESENT TENSES. CONTINUOUS-NON-CONTINUOUS VERBS

Theoretical background. In Use – Units 1-4, 7-12, Round Up, pp. 5-9. Grammar Way pp.6-11, Grammar by Verba L. c.7-15, 26-29, 34-39, 45-47

Video explanations

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=TUKYWPUW4g&ab_channel=LearnEasyEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=X6LuWwb9whM&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=70w98yeKj74&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jopAHmvPT-g&ab_channel=InteractiveEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nFdXIenda98&ab_channel=EnglishwithRonnie%C2%B7EnglishLessons4UwithengVid

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Z2Fu_sVbXbs&ab_channel=InteractiveEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=M2X2SfLK3pM&ab_channel=MiguelAngelRodriguezLopez

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=OsW5sV3GMDM&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zhj6zhNTlrM&ab_channel=GRAMMARSONGSandEXERCISES

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vLIJ9GfpuFc&list=RDQML5qcHO-KRM4&start_radio=1&ab_channel=CrownAcademyofEnglish

Exercise 1. Identify the tenses, then match them to the correct descriptions

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. He runs a large travel agency. | a actions taking place at or around the moment of speaking; temporary situations |
| 2. The thief enters the room and opens the safe. | b emphasis on duration of an action which began in the past and continues up to the present |
| 3. He has cleared out the garage. | c reviews /sports commentaries /dramatic narratives |
| 4. She's been practising that song for hours. | d past actions of a certain duration having visible results/effects in the present |
| 5. He's working hard these days. | e fixed arrangements in the near future |
| 6. He's gained a lot of weight recently. | f timetables/programs (future meaning) |

7. Tom's picking me up at 7 o'clock tonight. g permanent situations or states
8. He's such a boring man who's always making a fuss about nothing. h recently completed actions
9. The ferry arrives at 10:00 am. I personal experiences, changes which have happened
10. You feel dizzy because you've been lying in the sun for too long! J frequently repeated actions with 'always' expressing the speaker's annoyance or criticism

Exercise 2. Put the verb in the correct form, present continuous or present simple

1. Let's go out. It ... (not/rain) now.
2. Julia is very good at languages. She ... (speak) four languages very well.
3. Hurry up! Everybody ... (wait) for you.
4. ... (you/listen) to the radio?' 'No, you can turn it off.'
5. ... (you/listen) to the radio every day?' 'No, just occasionally.'
6. The River Nile ... (flow) into the Mediterranean.
7. Look at the river. It ... (flow) very fast today - much faster than usual.
8. We usually ... (grow) vegetables in our garden but this year we ... (not/grow) any.
9. 'How is your English?' 'Not bad. It ... (improve) slowly.'
10. Ron is in London at the moment. He ... (stay) at the Park Hotel. He ... (always/stay) there when he's in London.
11. Can we stop walking soon? I ... (start) to feel tired.
12. 'Can you drive?' 'I ... (learn). My father ... (teach) me.'
13. Normally I ... (finish) work at 5.00, but this week I ... (work) until 6.00 to earn a bit more money.
14. My parents ... (live) in Bristol. They were born there and have never lived anywhere else. Where ... (your parents/live)?
15. Sonia ... (look) for a place to live. She ... (stay) with her sister until she finds somewhere.
16. 'What ... (your father/do)?' 'He's an architect but he ... (not/work) at the moment.'
17. (at a party) Usually I ... (enjoy) parties but I ... (not/enjoy) this one very much.
18. The train is never late. It ... (always/leave) on time.
19. Jim is very untidy. He ... (always/leave) his things all over the place.

Exercise 3. Open the brackets

1. (You/not/seem/very happy today).
2. (What/you/do?)? Be quiet! (I/think)
3. (Who/this umbrella/belong to?) I've no idea.

4. (The dinner/smell/good)
5. Excuse me. (Anybody/sit/here?) No, it's free.
6. Can you ring me back in half an hour? (I/have/dinner)
7. Are you hungry? (You/want something)?
8. Jill is interested in politics but she (not/belong) to a political party.
9. Don't put the dictionary away. I (use) it.
10. Don't put the dictionary away. I (need) it.
11. Who is that man? What (he/want)?
12. Who is that man? Why (he/look) at us?
13. George says he's 80 years old but nobody (believe) him.
14. She told me her name but I (not/remember it now.)
15. I (think) of selling my car. Would you be interested in buying it?
16. I (think) you should sell your car. You (not/use) it very often.
17. I used to drink a lot of coffee but these days I (prefer) tea.
18. Air (consist) mainly of nitrogen and oxygen.

Exercise 4. Complete the sentences. Use the verb in brackets + just/already/yet (as shown)

1. A: Would you like something to eat?
B: No, thanks. I've just had lunch. (just/have)
2. A: Do you know where Julia is?
B: Yes, I ... her. (just/see)
3. A: What time is David leaving?
B: He ... (already/leave)
4. A: What's in the newspaper today?
B: I don't know. I ... (not/read/yet)
5. A: Is Ann coming to the cinema with us?
B: No, she ... the film. (already/see)
6. A: Are your friends here yet?
B: Yes, they (just/arrive)
7. A: What does Tim think about your plan?
B: I ... (not/tell/yet)

Exercise 5. Read the situations and write sentences with just, already or yet

1. After lunch you go to see a friend at her house. She says 'Would you like something to eat?'
You say: No, thank you. (have lunch)
2. Joe goes out. Five minutes later, the phone rings and the caller says 'Can I speak to Joe?'
You say: I'm afraid ... (go out)
3. You are eating in a restaurant. The waiter thinks you have finished and starts to take your plate away.
You say: Wait a minute! ... (not/finish)

4. You are going to a restaurant this evening. You phone to reserve a table. Later your friend says 'Shall I phone to reserve a table?'

You say: No ... it. (do)

5. You know that a friend of yours is looking for a job. Perhaps she has been successful. Ask her.

You say: ...? (find)

6. Ann went to the bank, but a few minutes ago she returned. Somebody asks 'Is Ann still at the bank?'

You say: No, ... (come back)

Exercise 6. Put in been or gone

1. Jim is on holiday. He to Italy.

2. Hello! I've just ... to the shops. I've bought lots of things.

3. Alice isn't here at the moment. She's ... to the shop to get a newspaper.

4. Tom has. ... out. He'll be back in about an hour.

5. 'Are you going to the bank?' 'No, I've already ... to the bank.'

6. A: Hello, Jim! Have you seen Mum? B: Yes. She ... the shops. She'll be back soon.

7. A: Where ...you today? B: I ... the cinema.

8. A: Shall we go on a picnic this weekend? B: Oh, yes! I ... (not) on a picnic for ages.

9. A: I'm going to India this year. B: I never India. A: Really? I ...there twice before.

10. A: Where are the children? B: They ... the park to play football. A: ... Dad ... with them? B: Of course. Don't worry!

Exercise 7. Put the verb into the present continuous (I am ~ing etc.) or present perfect continuous (I have been ~ing etc.)

1. Maria (learn) English for two years.

2. Hello, Tom. I (look) for you all morning. Where have you been?

3. Why (you/look) at me like that? Stop it!

4. We always go to Ireland for our holidays. We (go) there for years.

5. I (think) about what you said and I've decided to take your advice.

6. 'Is Ann on holiday this week?' 'No, she (work).'

7. Sarah is very tired. She (work) very hard recently.

Exercise 8. Read the situations and write two sentences using the words in brackets.

1. Tom started reading a book two hours ago. He is still reading it and now he is on page 53.

(read/for two hours) He has been reading for two hours.

(read/53 pages so far) He has read 53 pages so far.

2. Linda is from Australia. She is travelling round Europe at the moment. She

began her tour three months ago.

(travel/for three months) She ...

(visit/six countries so far) ...

3. Jimmy is a tennis player. He began playing tennis when he was ten years old. This year he is a national champion again--for the fourth time.

(win/the national championship four times) ...

(play/tennis since he was ten) ...

4. When they left college, Mary and Sue started making films together. They still make films.

(make/ten films since they left college) They ...

(make/films since they left college) ...

Exercise 9. Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or the present continuous

1. Why ... are you smelling (you/smell) the soap? B: It (smell) lovely. It's like roses! 2. A: Why (you/taste) the soup? B: To see if it (taste) good. I think it needs more salt. 3. A: I really (enjoy) home-made food. B: So do I, and I (enjoy) every bit of this meal. 4. A: Why (you/feel) the radiator? B: I (feel) cold in here. Is the heating on? 5. A: I (feel) very tired. B: You should go to bed early. 6. A: That famous opera singer (appear) at the opera house tonight. B: Yes. He (appear) to be feeling better after his operation. 7. A: I (see) Andy this evening. B: I (see). So, you don't want to come to the cinema with me, do you? 8. How much (the bag of apples/weigh)? B: I don't know yet. The man (weigh) the bag now. 9. A: Chris (be) a sensible person, isn't he? B: Yes, but in this case he (be) rather foolish. 10. I (think) about buying a new car soon Why? I (think) your car is fine. You don't need a new one. 11. What (you/look) at? The sky. It (look) as if it's going to rain. 12. A: My dad (fit) the old blind from the living room in my bedroom today. B: Really? (it/fit) that window? 13. A: My back (hurt). B: Why don't you lie down for a while?

Exercise 10. Article. Choose the correct form, with or without the

1. I'm afraid of dogs/the dogs.

2. Can you pass salt/the salt, please?

3. Apples/The apples are good for you.

4. Look at apples/the apples on that tree! They're very big.

5. Women/The women live longer than men/the men.

6. I don't drink tea/the tea. I don't like it

7. We had a very nice meal. Vegetables/The vegetables were especially good.

8. Life/The life is strange sometimes. Some very strange things happen.

9. I like skiing/the skiing but I'm not very good at it.

10. Who are people/the people in this photograph?

11. What makes people/the people violent? What causes aggression/the aggression?

12. All books/All the books on the top shelf belong to me.
13. Don't stay in that hotel. It's very noisy and beds/the beds are very uncomfortable
14. A pacifist is somebody who is against war/the war.
15. First World War/The First World War lasted from 1914 until 1918.
16. One of our biggest social problems is unemployment/the unemployment.
17. Ron and Brenda got married but marriage/the marriage didn't last very long.
18. Most people/The most people believe that marriage/the marriage and family life/the family life are the basis of society/the society.

Exercise 11. Put in the correct preposition: on, in, at, or for

1. Water boils ... 100 degrees Celsius.
2. When I was 14, I went ... a trip to France organised by my school.
3. I wouldn't like his job. He spends most of his time talking ... the phone.
4. Julia's grandmother died recently ... the age of 79.
5. Can you turn the light on, please? I don't want to sit ... the dark.
6. We didn't go ... holiday last year. We stayed at home.
7. I'm going to Scotland ... a short holiday next month.
8. I won't be here next week. I'll be ... holiday.
9. He got married ... 17, which is rather young to get married.
10. There was an interesting program ... the radio this morning.
- 11... my opinion, violent films should not be shown ... television.
12. I wouldn't like to go ... a cruise. I think I'd get bored.
13. I mustn't eat too much. I'm supposed to be ... a diet.
14. In Britain, children start school ... the age of five.
15. There was panic when people realized that the building was ... fire.
16. The Earth travels round the Sun ... a speed of 107,000 kilometres an hour.
17. 'Did you enjoy your holiday?' 'Not every minute, but ... the whole, yes.'
18. When you write a cheque, you have to write the amount ... words and figures.

Homework. Use correct Present Tenses

1. Every Monday, Sally (drive) her kids to football practice.
2. Usually, I (work) as a secretary at ABT, but this summer I (study) French at a language school in Paris. That is why I am in Paris.
3. Shhhhh! Be quiet! John (sleep)
4. Don't forget to take your umbrella. It (rain)
5. I hate living in Seattle because it (rain, always)
6. I'm sorry I can't hear what you (say) because everybody (talk) so loudly.
7. Justin (write, currently) a book about his adventures in Tibet. I hope he can find a good publisher when he is finished.
8. Do you want to come over for dinner tonight? Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. I (go) to a movie tonight with some friends.
9. The business cards (be, normally) printed by a company in New York. Their prices (be) inexpensive, yet the quality of their work is quite good.

10. This delicious chocolate (be) made by a small chocolatier in Zurich, Switzerland.

One Sunday Agnes and her mother went to the zoo. Agnes was very excited. She was interested in everything she saw. "Mother, look," she said. "There (to be) a monkey in this cage. It (to eat) an apple. Now it (to give) a bite to another monkey. I (to think) monkeys (to like) apples very much." "Yes, dear," said her mother. "Now I (to want) to go and see the lions and tigers. Where they (to live), mother?" "In that big house over there. Come along." Agnes enjoyed herself very much in the lion house. "Mother," she said, "the tiger (to want) a drink: it (to go) to the dish of water there in the corner. And the lion (to look) right at me. You (to think) it (to want) to eat me up? When the lions and tigers (to have) their dinner, mother?" "The keepers (to bring) them great pieces of meat every day at four o'clock. And they (to make) a big noise before their dinner time, so everybody (to know) they (to be) hungry."

Additional exercise 1. Open the brackets

Dear Sal, You'll never guess where I 1) am writing (write) from. I 2) (sit) in the garden of a hotel overlooking Lake Windermere. It's so good to get away. We 3) (stay) here for nearly a week now. Every morning I 4) (get up) at 7 o'clock and I 5) (go) for a swim in the lake before breakfast. Since we arrived, we 6) (do) a lot of sightseeing but we 7) (not/visit) the castle yet. We 8) (watch) the boats coming and going all morning and the owner of the hotel 9) (just/suggest) that we take a boat trip this afternoon. There is a boat that 10) (leave) at 2 o'clock that we can take to cross the lake to Wray Castle – it sounds like fun. We 11).. (travel) to Scotland this weekend to visit relatives and then we 12) (return) to London next week. What 13) (you/do) in Devon since you got there? Email me soon and tell me your news.

Additional exercise 2. Open the brackets

1. A: Tortoises (live) to be very old. B: I've heard of one which is over a hundred years old!
2. A: Are you still busy? B: Yes. I (read) this article for an hour and I still (not/finish).
3. A: More and more people (go) to university these days. B: Yes. I think it's a good thing.
4. A: I (have) a party tonight. Do you want to come? B: Yes. What time does it start?
5. A: Why are your shoes wet? B: I (wash) the car.
6. A: What's the matter? B: I (break) my ankle.
7. A: What do I need to do next? B: You (add) the sugar to the mixture and you (mix) it well.
8. A: Who (use) my car? B: I have.
9. A: Are you new here? B: No. Actually, I (live) here for almost ten years.

10. A: Pete is playing his music very loud. B: Again! He (always/do) that!
11. A: Have you made plans for Saturday yet? B: I (go) to the cinema with Jack.
12. A: Mr Collins is a very good teacher. B: Well, he (teach) Maths for twenty-five years, you know.
13. A: Are you going to the concert on Saturday night? B: Yes. Actually, I (already/buy) the tickets.
14. A: Hello, Simon. B: Oh! We (always/meet) each other in this supermarket.

Revision test. Circle the correct tense

1. 'What do you do / are you doing tonight?' 'I stay / I'm staying at home.'
2. Can you text me when you get / 're getting home?
3. The sun rises / is rising in the east and sets / is setting in the west.
4. Why do you laugh / are you laughing? It isn't funny!
5. My dad leaves / is leaving home every day at eight o'clock.
6. My sister always borrows / is always borrowing my clothes. It's really annoying!
7. What time does your train arrive / is your train arriving?

THEME 1.4. PAST TENSES. EMPHATIC STRUCTURES

Video.

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hAp-s3Hzrbw&ab_channel=EverydayEnglish

Revision. Open the brackets

1. A: Linda ... (learn) to drive at the moment. B: I know. She told me last week.
2. A: Has Alan got a job? B: Oh yes. He (be) the manager of a leisure centre. 3. A: Do you want to have a break now? B: Not yet. I (write) a report for tomorrow's meeting. 4. A: It's ten o'clock. Have you given the manager his letters? B: Yes, and I (also/type) six reports so far this morning. 5. Is Jeff still in the garden? B: A: Yes. He (plant) flowers all afternoon. 6. That author is very well-known, isn't she? B: Yes. She (write) twenty novels.

Theoretical background. Study Grammar Way, pp.6-8, 10-11. Підручник "English Grammar" Л.Г.Верба, с.7-15, 26-29, 34-39, 45-47. In Use, Units 5, 6, 10, 13-16, 18. Round-Up-6, pp. 10-14.

Video.

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=C2WibetqA48&ab_channel=ESLTeacherTom

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=e0q24_bB_54&ab_channel=LearnEnglishwithRebecca%C2%B7engVid

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=W_59N5KKCTk&ab_channel=EnglishWithKrisAmerikos

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=WONDX4iskiM&ab_channel=LearnEnglishbyPocketPassport

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=oDGCCJRZU7I&ab_channel=LearnEnglishwithGill%C2%B7engVid

Exercise 1. Identify the tenses, then match them to the correct descriptions

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. She opened the cupboard, took out a dress and put it on. | a past action in progress interrupted by another past action |
| 2. She was upset because she had been waiting to hear from her son for days. | b past action which occurred before another action or before a stated time in the past |
| 3. They were still discussing the plan at midnight. | c two or more simultaneous past actions |
| 4. They were flying over the Andes when the storm began. | d action continuing over a period up to a specific time in the past |
| 5. Tom was reading out the text while Sara was writing it down. | e past actions which happened immediately one after the other |

6. She had finished most of the work by the time her boss arrived. f past action of a certain duration which had visible results in the past
7. He always went to work by train. g past habit or state
8. We had been living in the same house for twelve years before we decided to move. h action in the middle of happening at a stated past time

Exercise 2. Put the verbs into the correct form, past continuous or past simple

1. I (see) Sue in town yesterday but she (look) the other way.
2. I (meet) Tom and Ann at the airport a few weeks ago. They (go) to Berlin and I (go) to Madrid. We (have) a chat while we (wait) for our flights.
3. I (cycle) home yesterday when suddenly a man (step) out into the road in front of me. I (go) quite fast but luckily, I (manage) to stop in time and (not/hit) him.
4. Jane (wait) for me when I (arrive).
5. 'What (you/do) this time yesterday?' 'I was asleep.'
6. '(you/go) out last night?' 'No, I was too tired.'
7. 'Was Carol at the party last night?' 'Yes, she (wear) a really nice dress.'
8. How fast (you/drive) when the accident (happen)?
9. John (take) a photograph of me while I (not/look).
10. We were in a very difficult position. We (not/know) what to do.
11. I haven't seen Alan for ages. When I last (see) him, he (try) to find a job in London.
12. I (walk) along the street when suddenly I (hear) footsteps behind me. Somebody (follow) me. I was frightened and I (start) to run.
13. When I was young, I (want) to be a bus driver.

Exercise 3. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form, present perfect or past simple

1. 'Where's your key?' 'I don't know. I've lost it.' (lose)
2. I was very tired, so I lay down on the bed and went to sleep. (be)
3. Mary ... to Australia for a while but she's back again now. (go)
4. 'Where's Ken?' 'He ... out. He'll be back in about an hour.' (go)
5. I did German at school but I ... most of it. (forget)
6. I meant to phone Diane last night but I ... (forget)
7. I ... a headache earlier but I feel fine now. (have)
8. Look! There's an ambulance over there. There ... an accident. (be)
9. They're still building the new road. They ... it. (not/finish)
10. 'Is Helen still here?' 'No, she ... out.' (just/go)
11. The police ... three people but later they let them go. (arrest)
12. Ann ... me her address but I'm afraid I ... it. (give, lose)
13. Where's my bike? It ... outside the house. It ... (be, disappear)

14. What do you think of my English? Do you think I ... ?(improve)

Exercise 4. Put the verb into the most suitable form, past continuous (I was doing), past perfect (I had done) or past perfect continuous (I had been doing)

1. It was very noisy next door. Our neighbours (have) a party.
2. We were good friends. We (know) each other for a long time.
3. John and I went for a walk. I had difficulty keeping up with him because he (walk) so fast.
4. Mary was sitting on the ground. She was out of breath. She (run)
5. When I arrived, everybody was sitting round the table with their mouths full. They (eat).
6. When I arrived, everybody was sitting round the table and talking. Their mouths were empty but their stomachs were full. They (eat).
7. Jim was on his hands and knees on the floor. He (look) for his contact lens.
8. When I arrived, Kate (wait) for me. She was rather annoyed with me because I was late and she (wait) for a very long time.
9. I was sad when I sold my car. I (have) it for a very long time.
10. We were extremely tired at the end of the journey. We (travel) for more than 24 hours.

Exercise 5. Use correct tenses

In 1912, a passenger steamship called the Titanic 1) (sail) across the Atlantic Ocean from England to America. A bright moon 2) (shine) and a gentle breeze 3) (blow). The ship 4) (sail) for four days and was now more than halfway towards its destination - New York City. Some passengers 5) (sleep) in their cabins while others 6) (relax) on deck, when suddenly they all 7) (hear) a loud bang. 9) They (run) to the railing of the ship, and 10) (look) over the side. To their horror, they saw 11) it (hit) an iceberg which 12) (tear) a hole in the side of the ship. Water was pouring into the ship at an alarming rate. There were not enough lifeboats on the ship and tragically more than 1,500 people lost their lives that night. The sinking of the Titanic remains the most infamous sea disaster in history.

Exercise 6. Article. Put in the or a where necessary. If the sentence is already complete leave an empty space (-)

1. When was ... telephone invented?
2. Can you play ... music instrument?
3. Jill plays ... violin in an orchestra.
4. There was ... piano in the corner of the room.
5. Can you play ... piano?
6. Our society is based on ... family.
7. Martin comes from ... large family.

8. When was ... paper first made?

Exercise 7. Put in the correct preposition: by, in, on or with

1. Who is that man standing ... the window?
2. I managed to put the fire out ... a fire extinguisher.
3. The plane was badly damaged ... lightning.
4. These photographs were taken ... a friend of mine.
5. These photographs were taken ... a very good camera.
6. I don't mind going ... car but I don't want to go ... your car.
7. Shall we get a taxi or shall we go ... foot?
8. What's that music? I know it's ... Beethoven but I can't remember what it's called.
9. There was a small table ... the bed ... a lamp and a clock ... it.
10. Our team lost the game only because of a mistake ... one of our players.

Exercise 8. Complete the sentences using inversion

1. We can get into house only if you have a key.
2. If the weather got colder, we would turn on the heating.
3. He had just entered when the telephone rang.
4. He visits us so rarely that I can hardly remember what he looks like.
5. Mark works so hard that I'm sure he'll be promoted soon.
6. If you had been there, you would have enjoyed it.
7. He spoke to me only after I spoke to him.
8. Janet won't get on a plane under any circumstances.
9. I realized who she was only after a few minutes.
10. She didn't know that her wish would come true. never
11. He didn't laugh once all evening.
12. They scarcely talk to each other any more.

Exercise 9. Complete the following sentences by using the emphatic do and the verb in brackets

1. My friend (to like – present) shopping.
2. I (to buy – past) a new car last week.
3. You (to behave – past) like a child at her birthday party yesterday.
4. They (to want – present) to get married.
5. She (to pay – present) her bills on time.
6. I (to take – present) a shower every day.
7. I love James Bond but I (to hate – present) Daniel Craig.
8. Our friend (to undergo – past) surgery last month.
9. You (to look – present) like a chipmunk.

10. We are always arguing but we (to love – present) each other.

Exercise 10. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first

1. Chris lost his phone yesterday.

It was Chris

2. Ella is getting her hair cut tomorrow.

It's tomorrow

3. His grandparents moved to New Zealand last year.

It's New Zealand

4. My brother wasn't born until 2000.

It wasn't until

5. Nick has been learning to ride a motorbike.

It's a

6. I have guitar lessons on Saturday mornings.

It's on

Homework 1. Use *Present Simple, Past Simple, Present Continuous, Past Continuous*

1. Nina (to celebrate) her birthday yesterday. Her room looked beautiful, there (to be) many flowers in it. When I (to come) in, somebody (to play) the piano, two or three pairs (to dance). 2. Listen! Somebody (to play) the piano. 3. I (to like) music very much. 4. When I (to look) out of the window, it (to rain) heavily and people (to hurry) along the streets. 5. What you (to do) at seven o'clock yesterday? – I (to have) supper. 6. When I (to come) home yesterday, I (to see) that all my family (to sit) round the table. Father (to read) a letter from my uncle who (to live) in Kiev. 7. Where you (to be) yesterday? — I (to be) at home the whole day. — How strange. I (to ring) you up at two o'clock, but nobody (to answer). — Oh, I (to be) in the garden. I (to read) your book and (not to hear) the telephone. 8. What you (to do) at five o'clock yesterday? — I (to work) in the library. — I (to be) there, too, but I (not to see) you. 9. Yesterday I (to work) at my English from five till seven. 10. It (to rain) the whole day yesterday. 11. Where your sister (to be) now? — She (to be) in her room. She (to do) her homework.

Present Perfect, Present Continuous, Present Simple* или *Past Simple

1. Please give me a pencil, I (to lose) mine. 2. I (not to meet) Peter since Monday. 3. Nina just (to finish) work. 4. Where Sergei (to be)? — He (to go) home. He (to leave) the room a minute ago. 5. What you (to read) now? — I (to read) "Jane Eyre" by Charlotte Bronte. 6. They (to read) "Ivanhoe" by Walter Scott a month ago. What about you? You (to read) "Ivanhoe"? 7. My watch (to stop). There (to be) something wrong with it. 8. You (to see) Jack today? —

Yes, I (to see) him at the institute. 9. You (to hear) the new symphony by M.? — Yes, I... . — When you (to hear) it? — I (to hear) it last Sunday. 10. You (to change) so much. Anything (to happen)? 11. What you (to do) here at such a late hour? You (to write) your composition? — No, I (to write) it already. I (to work) at my report. — And when you (to write) your composition? — I (to finish) it two days ago. 12. I say, Tom, let's have dinner. — No, thank you, I already (to have) dinner. 13. What the weather (to be) like? It still (to rain)? — No, it (to stop) raining.

Homework 2. Make sentences emphatic

1. The fish made Jasmine sick. (**It was**)
2. Greg lost the office keys. (**It**)
3. They've done something unforgivable. (**What**)
4. I came by bus because my car has broken down. (**The reason**)
5. A second chance is the only thing I want. (**All**)
6. An old oak tree stands beside the river bank. (**Beside**)
7. The government has hardly ever suffered such an overwhelming defeat. (**Seldom**)
8. As soon as we arrived they announced that the show was cancelled. (**No sooner**)
9. Refunds cannot be given under any circumstances. (**Under**)
10. We saw Roberto at the club last night. (**It was Roberto**)
11. They don't enjoy watching sci-fi films (**It's sci-fi films**) \
12. This restaurant rarely gets other any more (**Rarely**).
13. If he had left earlier, he would have been on time (**Had**).
14. She was so happy that she decided to celebrate (**So**).
15. I hardly had entered the room when the phone rang (**Hardly**)

Additional exercise 1. Open the brackets

One fine morning, a man 1) (fish) in a river. The sun 2) (shine) and the man 3) . (sit) on the river bank. Everything was very quiet and peaceful. The man 4) (wait) patiently for several hours when suddenly he 5) (feel) something pulling on the fishing line. He 6) (stand up) quickly and 7) (begin) to take in the line. He 8) just/lift) the huge fish he had caught out of the water when there was a loud splash and it fell back into the river. At first, the man didn't know what 9) (happen). Then, he 10) (look) carefully at his fishing line. It 11) (snap). The poor man was so disappointed that he 12) (pack) away all his things and went home.

Additional exercise 2. Open the brackets

The biggest event in Tom's life 1) (happen) by chance. He 2) (be) 22 years old and he 3) (just/graduate) from university. He was looking for a job. He 4) (want) to be a journalist but he 5) (know) he 6) (not/have) enough experience. You see,

as a student, he 7). (spend) most of his time in the university theatre. He 8) (apply) to many newspapers but he 9) (not/receive) any replies. Then one day, the phone 10) (ring). It was a woman who 11) (offer) him a job as an actor. She 12) (see) him in a play at the university and 13) (enjoy) the performance. He 14) (take) the job and ever since then he's been a very successful actor. Last night he 15) (discover) he 16) (win) an award for his performance in the play.

Revision test. Underline the correct time expression

1. I *still/yet/just* hadn't done my homework when he came. 2 She had been singing for years *before/after/when* she finally became a star. 3 Meg was lying in the sun *before/while/as soon as* the children were playing in the pool. 4. Our team had scored three goals *by the time/ until/while* we got to the match. 5 *How long ago/How long/While* did you pass your driving test? 6 He continued his journey *before/after/yet* he had changed the tyre. 7 The professor didn't start speaking *after/ until/yet* everyone was quiet. 8 She took off her coat *just/as soon as/already* she entered the house.

THEME 1.5. FUTURE ACTIONS. REAL CONDITIONALS

Theoretical background. Grammar Way, pp. 20-24, English Grammar textbook, pp.22-23, 28-29, 31, 42-43. In Use units 19-25

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KJZHIVji7s&ab_channel=mmmEnglish

Exercise 1. Open the brackets

Dear Janet, how are you? I 1) (write) to you from Hawaii. The hotel we 2) (stay) in is amazing! It's very hot here and we 3) (have) a great time. Today we 4) (be) all at the beach. Right now, my sisters, Carla and Daniela, 5) (build) a sandcastle, Mum and Dad 6) (play) beach volley for over an hour and Giovanni, my brother, 7) (just/go) diving with his friends. They 8) (go) diving every day. So far I 9) (try) windsurfing. It's really thrilling! We 10) (not/do) much sightseeing yet but tomorrow we 11) (go) on a trip round the island. We're all looking forward to it. See you soon, Luisa

Exercise 2. Open the brackets

It was a cold winter's night. The wind 1) (blow) and thick snow 2) (fall) to the ground. None of us could sleep, so we all 3) (stay) up late. While we 4) (sit) in the living room, listening to my brother, Jed, play the guitar, Mum 5) (come) out of the kitchen with hot chocolate for everyone. We 6) (have) a great time when, suddenly, all the lights 7) (go) out! Mum 8) (begin) looking for some candles. Ted 9) (try) to help us when my little sister, Emma, 10) (fall) off the couch. As I 11) (try) to reach her, I 12) (trip) over my brother's guitar. Luckily, Dad 13) (find) some matches and 14) (light) the fire. We could see again but we couldn't stop laughing!

Exercise 3. Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple, the present continuous, the past simple or the past continuous

Steve: Hi, Tom! What a surprise to see you here. I 1) Hi, Steve. Yes, I'm not usually around here but I 2) (lose) my mobile phone yesterday and now I 3) (shop) for a new one. Steve: Oh, I'm sorry to hear that. Hey! Maybe I can help you. My sister 4) (get) a great new mobile from a shop just around the corner from here last week. Tom: Really? 5) (she/get) a good deal? Steve: She got a 25% discount! 16) (go) there right now actually. Do you want to come with me? Tom: Thanks. That would be great. 7) (you/shop) for a mobile phone, too? Steve: No, I 8) (want) to buy some PlayStation games. Tom: Well, you should go to Electroworld then. They 9) (have) a sale on at the moment. All the games 10) (be) half price. Steve: Really? Thanks for the tip. It's lucky we 11) (bump) into each other today!

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=0-6ZBRkZKWI&ab_channel=EnglishwithEmma%C2%B7engVid
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=VDGJEjAmmU4&ab_channel=LearnEasyEnglish
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=RiwiaoBGRzA&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

Exercise 1. Identify the tenses, then match them to the correct descriptions

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. I'm hungry. I'll make a sandwich. | a action which may (not) happen in the future |
| 2. The bus for Brighton departs in an hour. | b action in progress at a stated future time |
| 3. We'll be sailing around the islands this time | c fixed arrangement in the near future next month. |
| 4. By May, he will have been living abroad for six years. | d action which will be finished before a stated future time |
| 5. The men are delivering the furniture tomorrow. | e timetable/program |
| 6. Look at the baby! He's going to eat that worm! | f on-the-spot decision |
| 7. Perhaps we'll see Nicky at the club tonight. | g action which is the result of a routine |
| 8. He's going to take a few days off next week. | h duration of an action up to a certain time in the future |
| 9. I'm sure you'll have a wonderful holiday. | I prediction about the future |
| 10. Will Jo be staying with you this summer? | j action intended to be performed in the near future |
| 11. I'll be having lunch with Sam tomorrow as usual. | k asking politely about people's arrangements |
| 12. They will have made a decision by Friday. | l evidence that sth will definitely happen |
| 13. Shall we visit the museum this weekend? | m suggesting something to somebody |

Exercise 2. Put the verb into the more suitable form, present continuous or present simple

1. I'm going (go) to the theatre this evening.
2. Does the film begin (the film/begin) at 3.30 or 4.30?
3. We (have) a party next Saturday. Would you like to come?
4. The art exhibition (open) on 3 May and (finish) on 15 July.

5. I (not/go) out this evening. I (stay) at home.
6. ' (you/do) anything tomorrow morning?' 'No, I'm free. Why?'
7. We (go) to a concert tonight. It (begin) at 7.30.
8. You are on the train to London and you ask another passenger: Excuse me. What time (this train/get) to London?
9. You are talking to Ann: Ann, I (go) to town. (you/come) with me?
10. Sue (come) to see us tomorrow. She (travel) by train and her train (arrive) at
11. I (meet) her at the station.
12. I (not/use) the car this evening, so you can have it.
13. You and a friend are watching television. You say: I'm bored with this program. When (it/finish)?

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences using will ('ll) or going to

1. A: Why are you turning on the television?
B: I'm going to watch the news. (I/watch)
2. A: Oh, I've just realised. I haven't got any money.
B: Haven't you? Well, don't worry. ... you some. (I/lend)
3. A: I've got a headache.
B: Have you? Wait there and ... an aspirin for you. (I/get)
4. A: Why are you filling that bucket with water?
B: ... the car. (I/wash)
5. A: I've decided to repaint this room.
B: Oh, have you? What colour ... it? (you/paint)
6. A: Where are you going? Are you going shopping?
B: Yes, ... something for dinner. (I/buy)
7. A: I don't know how to use this camera.
B: It's quite easy. ... you. (I/show)
8. A: What would you like to eat?
B: ... a sandwich, please. (I/have)
9. A: Did you post that letter for me?
B: Oh, I'm sorry. I completely forgot ... it now. (I/do)
10. A: The ceiling in this room doesn't look very safe, does it?
B: No, it looks as if ... down. (it/fall)
11. A: Has George decided what to do when he leaves school?
B: Oh, yes. Everything is planned. ... a holiday for a few weeks and then ... a computer programming course. (he/have, he/do)

Exercise 4. Read the situations and complete the sentences using will ('ll) or going to

1. The phone rings and you answer. Somebody wants to speak to Jim.
CALLER: Hello. Can I speak to Jim, please?
YOU: Just a moment. ... him. (I/get)
2. It's a nice day. You've decided to sit in the garden. Before going outside, you

tell your friend.

YOU: The weather's too nice to stay indoors. ... in the garden. (I/sit)

FRIEND: That's a good idea. I think ... you. (I/join)

3. Your friend is worried because she has lost an important letter.

YOU: Don't worry about the letter. I'm sure ... it. (you/find)

FRIEND: I hope so.

4. There was a job advertised in the paper recently. At first you were interested but then you decided not to apply.

FRIEND: Have you decided what to do about that job that was advertised?

YOU: Yes, ... for it. (I/not/apply)

5. You and a friend come home very late. Other people in the house are asleep. Your friend is noisy.

YOU: Shhh! We (wake up) the other people.

Exercise 5. Put the verb into the correct form, will be (do)ing or will have (done)

1. Don't phone me between 7 and 8. We'll be having (we/have) dinner then.

2. Phone me after 8 o'clock. (we/finish) dinner by then.

3. Tomorrow afternoon we're going to play tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 4 o'clock, (we/play) tennis.

4. A: Can we meet tomorrow afternoon?

B: Not in the afternoon. (I/work).

5. B has to go to a meeting which begins at 10 o'clock. It will last about an hour.

A: Will you be free at 11.30?

B: Yes, (the meeting/finish) by that time.

6. Tom is on holiday and he is spending his money very quickly. If he continues like this, (he/spend) all his money before the end of his holiday.

7. Chuck came to Britain from the USA nearly three years ago. Next Monday it will be exactly three years. So on Monday, (he/be) in Britain for exactly three years.

8. Do you think (you/still/do) the same job in ten years' time?

9. Jane is from New Zealand. She is travelling around Europe at the moment. So far she has travelled about 1,000 miles. By the end of the trip, (she/travel) more than 3,000 miles.

10. If you need to contact me, (I/stay) at the Lion Hotel until Friday.

11. A: (you/see) Laura tomorrow?

B: Yes, probably. Why?

A: I borrowed this book from her. Can you give it back to her?

Exercise 6. Article. Choose the correct form, with or without the

1. Have you ever been to British Museum/the British Museum. (the ... is correct)

2. Hyde Park/The Hyde Park is a very large park in central London.

3. Another park in central London is St James's Park/the St James's Park.

4. Grand Hotel/The Grand Hotel is in Baker Street/the Baker Street.
5. We flew to New York from Gatwick Airport/the Gatwick Airport near London.
6. Frank is a student at Liverpool University/the Liverpool University.
7. If you're looking for a good clothes shop, I would recommend Harrison's/the Harrison's.
8. If you're looking for a good pub, I would recommend Ship Inn/the Ship Inn.
9. Statue of Liberty/The Statue of Liberty is at the entrance to New York harbour/the New York harbour.
10. You should go to Science Museum/the Science Museum. It's very interesting.
11. John works for IBM/the IBM now. He used to work for British Telecom/the British Telecom.
12. 'Which cinema are you going to this evening?' 'Classic/The Classic.'
13. I'd like to go to China and see Great Wall/the Great Wall.
14. Which newspaper shall I buy Independent/the Independent or Herald/the Herald?
15. This book is published by Cambridge University Press/the Cambridge University Press.

Exercise 7. Put in the correct preposition

1. She paid for lunch advance, so we don't need to paynow.
2. I went to the wrong housemistake.
3. Please make sure that you'retime for the class.
4. I was walking to the station andchance I saw the glove that I'd lost on the ground.
5. I love eating out in London.instance, one of my favourite restaurants has amazing Japanese food.
6. I think the cat isdanger on that high roof.
7. I picked up the laptop andmy surprise it fell apart in my hands.
8. I have a lot ...common with my cousin. We both like many of the same things.
9. If the baby starts to cry, pick her uponce.
10. Did you forget your pursepurpose so you wouldn't have to pay?
11. It's best to arrivefoot because there is nowhere to park.
12. What do a whale and a dolphin havecommon?
13. He added salt instead of sugar ...mistake.
14. What's your favourite thing to do?instance, do you like sport?
15. The book wasreach on a high shelf.
16. I want to go to Germany ...a change. I've never been there.
17. Please let me know ...advance if you can't come to the meeting.
18. The little girl broke the toypurpose because she was so angry.
19. Please comeonce. We have a big problem.

20. She worked very hard and ...last she managed to pass the exam.
21. We need to be ...time or my grandmother will start to get anxious.
22. It feels like owning a house isreach. I'll never be able to do it.
23. We thought about it a lot andlast we decided to buy a new flat.
24. We watched a filma change. Usually we read.
25. I went to the bookshop and chance I found a really interesting book about Switzerland.

Exercise 8. Make sentences according to the sample. *If you want to try New York cuisine, go to Katz's Deli. It's famous for its hot dogs.*

try New York cuisine	Broadway Avenue (the centre of the American theatre industry)
go clothes shopping	The Plaza Hotel (has a pool and a spa)
stay at a luxury hotel	The Empire State Building (the tallest building in New York City)
get a great view of the city	Macy's (the second largest department store in the world)
enjoy thrilling rides	Coney Island (has a number of amusement parks)
see an entertaining musical	Katz's Deli (famous for its hot dogs)

Exercise 9. Use *unless*

1. If the neighbours don't stop shouting, I'll call the police.
2. If he doesn't pay the fine, he may go to prison.
3. If the traffic isn't heavy, we should arrive by 10 pm.
4. If the buses aren't running, we'll get a taxi.
5. If the athlete doesn't improve his speed, he won't break the record.
6. If the weather doesn't act better, we will cancel the football game.

Exercise 10. Now complete the following using *if* or *when*

1. ... I am late for work, my boss gets very angry. That's why I am always on time.
2. ... I leave work, I usually go to a café to relax before I go home.
3. ... Sarah is at a restaurant, she usually chooses vegetarian meals.
4. Danny's car hardly ever breaks down. But ... it does, he just calls his dad who is a mechanic.
5. Peter's car is so old it's always breaking down. ... it does, he calls the tow company and walks.
6. Pat gets a lot of holidays in a year. ... she goes on holiday she always goes to India.
7. Terry works too hard. ... she has a holiday, she just stays at home.
8. ... Pete goes to the movies, he always buys a large popcorn and a cola.
9. I rarely go to the movies. ... I do, I choose action films.

10. I hardly ever write letters just e-mails but ... I do, I make sure they're well written.

Homework 1. Fill in the correct present or future forms

A: What 1) you (do) tonight Bob? B: I 2) (try) to finish my homework because I 3) (go) to my cousin's wedding on Saturday and I 4) (not/be able) to do it then. A: What time 5) (the wedding/start) on Saturday? B: The ceremony 6) (begin) at 2 o'clock. Afterwards we 7) (go) to the reception. A: 8) (any of your friends/be) there? B: No, but my cousin says I can bring a friend. 9) (you/do) anything on Saturday night? A: No, but I 10) (feel) shy not knowing anyone else there. B: Don't worry. It 11) (be) a big party and I'm sure you 12) (have) a great time. A: OK, then! Thanks for inviting me.

Additional exercise 1. Use will, won't or shall

Wendy: I hope you 1) (be able) to come to the surprise party we are arranging for Kate this weekend. Emma: Of course I 2), Wendy. But I'm afraid my sister Harriet 3) ... be able to come. Wendy: Oh that's a pity! Kate 4) be disappointed about that; she really likes your sister. Emma: How many people do you think 5) ... be there? Wendy: Well, I've asked everyone in the class and so far 15 people have promised they 6) ... come. Who else 7) ... I invite? Emma: How about the girls in the netball team? Wendy: That's a good idea. They 8) ... miss her when she moves to Scotland. Emma: 9) ... we buy her a leaving present too? Wendy: Definitely! I 10) . ask everyone to make a small contribution. Emma: I'm sure everyone 11) ... be happy to do that. We 12) ... all miss Kate - I hope she 13) ... forget about us in Scotland.

Homework 2. Complete the sentences with a time expression from the list.

after, before, if, in case (x2), unless, until, when

1. I will lock the door ... I go to bed.
2. They're taking umbrellas ... it rains.
3. Sarah will work from home tomorrow ... her boss needs her in the office.
4. I'll call you ... I land in Zurich.
5. Do you want to grab something to eat ... the film? It's a long film and we'll be hungry when we get out of the cinema.
6. I'll make a cake ... I have time.
7. We'll take sandwiches ... we get hungry.
8. They'll be in the park ... it gets dark.

Use correct forms

1. If you (go) out with your friends tonight, I (watch) the football match on TV.
2. I (earn) a lot of money if I (get) that job.
3. If she (hurry / not) , we (miss) the bus.
4. If you (to mix) red and green, you (to get) brown.
5. If you (to drop) a glass on the floor(to drop), it (to break).

6. If babies (to be) hungry, they (to cry).
7. When you (to add) sugar, the sauce (to taste) sweet.
8. Water (to boil) if you (to heat) it to 100 °C.
9. Plants (to die) if they (not/to get) enough water.
10. If you (to put) water in the freezer, it (to become) ice.
11. When the sun (to rise), the street lights (to go out).
12. When you (to heat) ice, it (to melt).
13. He always (to take) his umbrella when it (to rain).

Additional exercise 2. Put in when or if

1. Don't worry ... I'm late tonight.
2. Tom might phone while I'm out this evening. ... he does, can you take a message?
3. I'm going to Rome next week. ... I'm there, I hope to visit a friend of mine.
4. I think Jill will get the job. I'll be very surprised ... she doesn't get it.
5. I'm going shopping. ... you want anything, I can get it for you.
6. I'm going away for a few days. I'll phone you ... I get back.
7. I want you to come to the party but ... you don't want to come, that's all right.
8. We can eat at home or, ... you prefer, we can go to a restaurant.

Revision test. Choose the correct item

1. Look at that boy! He ... from the tree.
A is going to fall C will be falling B goes to fall D will fall
2. George was happy ... home after his holiday abroad.
A returned B to return C returning D returns
3. She really ... to wear a raincoat today.
A ought C must B should D could
4. The crossword was . . . difficult for me to complete.
A much C too B enough D more
5. I feel exhausted; I think I ... to bed now.
A will have gone C go B am going D will go
6. Sarah ... submit the essay last Friday.
A has been having to C has to B had to D has had to
7. I heard him on the telephone.
A to talk C to be talking B talked D talking
- 8 ... I borrow your pen for a moment, please?
A Should C Might B Shall D Must
9. She in that house for ten years before she decided to move.
A had been living B has been living C lives D is living
10. The gardener went on even after it had started raining.
A to work B working C to have worked D works
11. I am supposed a meeting at 9 am tomorrow morning.

- A attending B to attend C attend D will attend
12. The children ... TV while their mum was preparing the dinner.
A were watching B watched C have been watching D watch
13. Sarah have gone for a walk in the park; I'm not sure.
A might B can C must D has to
14. I haven't seen Frank .. . we were at university together.
A for C yet B since D already
15. I wouldn't advise in the car; you might get dizzy.
A to read C reading B read D to be reading
16. What's the use of for Tim to arrive?
A to wait C to be waiting B wait D waiting
17. Now that he is retired, Harry spends most of his time ... in the garden.
A to work C is working B working D to be working
18. That perfume of strawberries.
A smell C was smelling B is smelling D smells
19. By April, Sam ... in the shop for three years.
A will have been working B is going to work C works D will work

THEME 1.6. SEQUENCE OF TENSES. INDIRECT SPEECH

Theoretical background. Grammar Way, pp.104. Підручник Л.Г.Верби, с.49-52. In Use, units 46-47, Round-Up-6, pp. 122-137

Review

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KvdVpoeY_dY&ab_channel=Mar%C3%A9DaJos%C3%A9Saborido

Exercise 1. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense

1. Paul rarely (go) to the cinema alone. 2 She (write) a letter to her pen-friend at the moment. 3 Chris (play) football when he injured his ankle. 4 They (not/arrive) at the stadium yet. 5 Terry (study) in her room since 11 o'clock this morning. 6 He (prepare) dinner by the time we arrived home.

Exercise 2. Put the verbs in brackets into the present simple or the future simple

"You 1) (meet) Agent 205 under the clock at the Leicester Square Station. When she 2) (arrive), she 3) (have) an envelope to give you. Before she 4) (give) it to you, she 5) (ask) you for the secret code. The secret code is "Jaguar". Take the envelope and go into the station. When the train 6) (come), get on it and go to Waterloo Station. As soon as you 7) (reach) Waterloo, take a taxi to the Opera House. By the time you 8) (get) the place, Jenny 9) (be) there. Give her the envelope. Wait until she 10) (drive) off and then go home. We 11) (call) you there. If you 12) (think) someone is following you at any time, stop and go home. We 13) (contact) you. Do you have any questions?"

Exercise 3. Here are some sentences about Debra. For each question complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use no more than three words

1. Debra's tooth began hurting on Monday. Debra (feel) terrible toothache since Monday. 2. Debra doesn't brush her teeth very often. Debra ...brushes her teeth. 3. Debra has an appointment with her dentist this afternoon. Debra is ... her dentist this afternoon. 4. Debra hasn't been to the dentist's for a long time. It's a long time since Debra ... 5. Debra's next visit to the dentist is in six months' time. Debra ... visit the dentist in six months.

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=3Z9Qayujd-M&t=2s&ab_channel=MelissaGann

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1Gw3DJxQhww&ab_channel=AntoniaRomaker-EnglishandRussianonline

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1Gw3DJxQhww&ab_channel=AntoniaRomaker-EnglishandRussianonline

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=L-wTVCByxzk&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=eplQBhE0-Hg&ab_channel=EnglishwithLucy

Exercise 1. Let's review sequence of tenses

1. They noticed they (fly) for three hours already.
2. Tom said that it (take) him an hour to get to the station.
3. She asked them if they (play) tennis in the afternoon.
4. Mary asked her brother if he (can) tell her the way to the shop.
5. Peter and John told me they (go) to the Kremlin the day before yesterday.
6. Mother said she (have) a bad headache. Don't bother her.
7. Dorothy asked Margaret if she (be) going to buy a new dress in the nearest future.
8. They told us they (visit) the Tretyakov gallery next Sunday.
9. Jack said that he already (write) the letter.
10. They asked if the work (finish) by tomorrow.

Exercise 2. Turn the following sentences into reported speech

1. "A lot of English words are borrowed from other languages," the teacher said to us. 2. "China is a densely populated country," she said. 3. "It's time they moved to a new house," Ann said. 4. "Water freezes below 0°C," he said. 5. "I was reading the children a story last night when the lights went out," she said. 6. "I'll help you to repair your car tomorrow," he said to me. 7. "I didn't understand the meaning of the film," he said. 8. "You can come to me if you have any problems," she said to him. 9. "I saw the film you recommended last night," he said to her. 10. "I'm going to Spain next week," he said. 11. "She doesn't understand," he said. 12. "I would invite more people if I had a bigger flat," he said. 13. "I will not repeat this again," he said to us. 14. "I've applied for several jobs this week," he said.

Exercise 3. Turn the following sentences into direct speech

The student advisor asked Barry why his grades had been dropping. Barry explained that he didn't have enough time to study. The student advisor asked Barry if he was taking part in too many after-school activities. Barry admitted that he was in three sports teams. As a result, he always felt tired at the end of the day. The student advisor suggested that Barry participate in one sport only and spend more time in the library studying. Barry agreed that it was a good idea. The student advisor asked him to meet with her after his next exam.

Exercise 4. Turn the following into reported speech

1. "He didn't steal the money, did he?" she said. 2. "Wonderful!" he said, when the bank manager agreed to lend him the money. 3. "Ouch!" he said, as the

nurse gave him the injection. 4. "I don't suppose you could lend me any money, could you?" he asked me. 5. "Wow!" she said, when she first saw the Pyramids. 6. "Would you like another piece of cake?" she asked. "Yes, please," he replied. 7. "Ugh!" she said, as she stepped into the mud puddle.

Exercise 5. Transform the following direct questions into their indirect forms

1. Where is the closest ATM? Could you tell me ...
2. Did Greg receive your postcard? Do you know ...
3. Is Larry meeting us in Paris? I wonder
4. How far is your house from the city centre? Have you any idea ...
5. What did the butler say when you gave him that tip? I would like to know ...
6. Will they offer special assistance to embark? Do you think ...
7. Did William find his phone in the end? Does anyone know ...
8. Has she ever been to Iceland? Does he know ...
9. Why are they digging holes in the road outside my house? Can anyone tell me
10. Can she also play the guitar? I wonder ...
11. Do we have enough sugar? - I wonder ...
12. Why did she cry? - Can you tell me ...
13. Does she speak Greek? - I'd like to know... Greek.
14. Where is Joe? - Do you know... ?
15. What time does the show start? - Do you have any idea ... ?
16. Is he all right? - I wonder ...all right.
17. What did he want? - Would you mind telling me... ?
18. Whose car was it? - Could you let me know...
19. Is this the right train? - Do you have any idea... the right train?
20. When will they get married? - I wonder

Exercise 6. Look at the sentences below and correct the wrong ones

1. My brother refused coming with me to the party.
2. Jane promised give me the book back the next day.
3. The man denied mugging the old lady.
4. My boyfriend encouraged me going to London to improve my English.
5. The tour guide recommended to visit the Picasso Museum.
6. The teachers threatened giving the students extra homework if they didn't stop talking.
7. My sister persuaded me not to go to the party.
8. The police accused him of not tell them the truth.

Exercise 7. Report the direct speech using the verbs in brackets

1. Don't forget to sign the documents' my boss told me (remind).
2. I really don't think you should leave your job' Jack's friend told him (advise)
3. Why don't we go for a drive' said Katie (suggest).

4. Don't park in this street' the man said to us (warn)
5. I'm sorry I was so rude-' he said (apologise).
6. Would you like to stay for dinner' Julia's friend asked her (invite).
7. I'm going with you to the doctor's' Jane said to me (insist).

Exercise 8. Use an Article

1. ...Second World war ended in 1945.
2. Do you knowpeople who livenext door.
3. Are you interested inart orarchitecture.
4. Don't stay in that hotel.beds are very uncomfortable.
5. I hateviolence.
6. Two of biggest problems facing our society arecrime and ... unemployment.
7. Ken's brother is in ... prison for robbery.
8. What time do your children finish school.
9. The other day ... fire brigade had to go toprison to put out the fire.
10. On ... way to London we passed through ... small village with ... old church. We stopped to visit ... church. It was beautiful building.
11. After ...work Ann usually goeshome.
12. When Ann was ill, we went to hospital to visit her.
13. The British Prime Minister lives at Downing Street 10.
14. ...Tate Gallery is the main modern art museum inLondon.
15. Have you ever visited Tower of London ?
16. Do you know.... time ? Yes, ...clock in the hall has just struck nine.

Exercise 9. Use Prepositions

1. He bought a book ... English poems and gave it... his sister.
2. I wrote ... him asking to send me a box ... chocolates.
3. The roof ... the house is very old.
4. There is a monument ... Shakespeare in Budapest.
5. One wheel ... my car must be changed.
6. He was standing outside the door ... his house and explaining ... the mechanic what was wrong with his car.
7. He gave her a big bunch ... flowers.
8. I sent a letter ... my friend.
9. The streets ... Paris are straight.
10. Many pages ... this book are torn.
11. The young scientist was trying to prove the necessity ... the experiment.
12. London is the capital ... Great Britain.
13. The embankments ... the Thames are faced with granite.
14. It is clear ... me that you don't know your lesson.
15. She was devoted ... her friends.
16. I explained ... the teacher that by the end ... the lesson I had not finished the translation ... the text and that's why I had not handed it ... him. The surprise ... the teacher was great. My explanation seemed strange ... the teacher.

Exercise 10. Use correct Tenses

Lost in the Mountains

Two walkers are reported to (miss) near the summit of Snowdon, the highest peak in Wales. John Watkins, aged 21 and Melanie McBrian, 19, (not return)

by nightfall, leading to fears that they (force) to spend the night on the mountain. Weather conditions, when the pair (set) off yesterday morning, were fairly good. By the afternoon, however, it had got much worse. Thick clouds quickly (spread) over the region and there was a sharp drop in temperature. The surface of the local lakes (begin) to freeze within a few hours. Blizzards began in the evening, with a great deal of snow (fall) above 500 metres. Friends of the two walkers (surprise) that they (hear) from either of them. Mountain rescue teams, which began looking for the couple early this morning, say that one or both of the walkers (slip) and fallen in bad weather conditions.

Homework 1. Turn the following sentences into reported speech

1. "How shall I tell Tom the bad news?" she said. 2. "Can I go home now?" he asked. 3. "You can come in but you'll have to be quiet," he said to her. 4. "What time shall we arrive in Cairo?" he asked. 5. "She must try harder if she wants to succeed," he said. 6. "My father will be angry with me if he finds out," she said. 7. "You shouldn't drive so fast," he said to her. 8. "I can meet you on Friday," he said. 9. "You'd better ask your parents," she said to him. 10. "I may not be able to meet you at the train station," he said to her. 11. "Can I have a piece of cake, please?" she said. 12. "Yes, OK. I'll tell her what happened," he said. 13. "Please, please let me go to the party," Sue said to her mother. 14. "I'll never be naughty again," Ted said to his father. 15. "I didn't come to school because I was ill," she said to her teacher. 16. "Let's play chess," he said. 17. "I'm sorry I forgot to phone you," he said to her. 18. "You should exercise more," the doctor said to him. 19. "Mark is always shouting at me," she said. 20. "Yes, it is a nice dress," he said. 21. "Shall I carry your bag, Tracy?" he said. 22. "No, I won't let you copy my homework," said Bill. 23. "You scratched my DVD," she said to hi

Homework 2. Rewrite the sentences/questions below using reported / indirect speech. Always change the tense, even though it is not always necessary. You can use 'said', 'told me', or 'asked'

1. Sarah: "I am in the shower right now."
2. John: "I dropped my son off at school this morning."
3. Samuel: "I am going to the beach with my sister this afternoon."
4. John: "Jessica will call you later."
5. The girls: "Who does John live with?"
6. Our classmate: "Did we have any homework last night?"
7. Sarah: "I am moving to Tokyo because I want to learn Japanese."
8. John: "Why do you have an umbrella?"
9. The students: "Our teacher can't find her books anywhere."
10. Sarah and Jillian: "Is John British?"
11. Steve: "I'm going to the beach so that I can play volleyball."
12. Ann: "Where is the bathroom?"
13. My parents: "What are you going to do with your life?"

14. Sarah: "I ate breakfast before I came to school."

Your friend Megan is very nosy (she always wants to know what's going on) so she constantly asks questions about your life and the lives of your friends. Rewrite her questions using the reported questions form.

1. Why do you date Ryan? She asked me why....
2. How much money do you make at your new job?
3. Does Ryan think I'm pretty?
4. Where is your favorite restaurant?
5. Do I look good in these jeans?
6. Can I borrow some twenty bucks?

Additional exercise 1. Reconstruct direct speech

1. I asked if they had taken the sick man to hospital. 2. I asked my friend if he had a headache. 3. I wanted to know when he had fallen ill. 4. I wondered if he had taken his temperature. 5. I asked him if the doctor had given him some medicine. I asked him if he was feeling better now. 6. I asked the man how long he had been in New York. 7. I asked him if he was going to a health resort. 8. We asked the girl if her father was still in London. 9. I asked the girl what sort of work her father did. 10. The man told us to have our passports ready. 11. He told us to pass up the gangway. 12. He said we would find our luggage on deck. 13. I asked my friend if he would go down to his cabin or stay up on deck. 14. He said he was a bad sailor and could not stay on deck. 15. We told the porter to take our luggage to cabin number eight. 16. I asked my friend if he often went to England. 17. He said he did not cross the English Channel very often for it was rough as a rule. 18. My friend asked me if I knew when the boat was due at Southampton.

Additional exercise 2. Fill in the gaps with the introductory verbs in the simple past

1. "Don't be afraid," he said to his son. He.... his son not to be afraid. 2. "Bring me a glass of water, please," she said to him. She him to bring her a glass of water. 3. "Please, please, don't tell my parents," he said to me. He .. me not to tell his parents. 4. "You should always wear your helmet when riding your bike," her father told her. Her father ... her to always wear her helmet when riding her bike. 5. "Let's go to the bowling alley," Jeff said to Tom. Jeff .. going to the bowling alley. 6. "Be quiet!" she said to her students. She.. her students to be quiet. 7. "Slowly add the sugar, butter and flour," the cook said. The cook ... us to slowly add the sugar, butter and flour. 8. "Get out of the car! " the police officer said to the thieves. The police officer... the thieves to get out of the car

Revision test. Choose the correct item

1. I don't like this food. Itawful.
A is tasting B has tasted C tastes

2. My little brother is afraid a bicycle.
A of riding B to riding C riding
3. It's quite late. We better leave now.
A should B would C had
4. I'm hungry. I think I ... something to eat.
A will make B make C am making
5. James had a glass of juice and went on ... his homework.
A doing B do C to do
6. Take your umbrella with you. It ... rain.
A can B must C might
7. I'd like ... to the theatre tonight.
A going B to be go C to go
8. He denied ... in the exam.
A having cheated B to have cheated C to cheating
9. You ... see a doctor as soon as possible.
A need B should C ought
10. Phone me as soon as you ... home.
A will get B get C have got
11. The car seems ... repaired. It's running perfectly now.
A having been B to have been C to having been
12. They ... to America last summer.
A had travelled B have travelled C travelled
13. Did Ann ... work in the UK before she came.
A use B used to C use to
14. By the time Laura arrived at the party, most of the guests ..
A already left B have already left C had already left
15. It was very kind of Peter ... me his book.
A lending B to lend C lend
16. You ... come to the lecture. It was optional.
A mustn't B didn't have to C couldn't
17. As she ... home from work, she ran into her old school friend.
A walked B was walking C had been walking
18. Bridget was upset because she ... the exam.
A won't pass B hasn't passed C hadn't passed

THEME 1.7. PASSIVE VOICE. HAVE SOMETHING DONE

Theoretical background. Grammar Way, pp.86-93. Підручник Л.Г.Верби, сс. 52-60. In Use Units 41-45. Round-Up-6, pp. 102-117

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CzoxIVPtPgI&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

Exercise 1. Turn the sentences into reported speech

1. "I have to go home now," Ian said. 2. "Where did I put my glasses?" Jeff wondered. 3. "I should have helped my mum with the housework," Karen said. 4. "I'll arrive at Heathrow Airport at noon," she said. 5. "Are you happy with your new car?" Jackie asked. 6. "I may leave tomorrow," Alex said.

Exercise 2. Write questions to which the words in bold are the answers

1. Henry won the gold medal in the 100 metres sprint. 2. Judy wants to eat a salad for lunch. 3. I arrived at Paddington Station at noon. 4. They will travel to the island by ferry. 5. The brown jacket costs £15. 6. David goes to the gym twice a week. 7. I brought my umbrella because I thought it was going to rain. 8. There are five eggs in the fridge.

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=W1_IRU6zx9g&ab_channel=Dr.JodieSalter

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=7FBr-G0ur9I&ab_channel=EasyEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vkkPswDvbA0&ab_channel=EnglishDive

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=QedgxUGimRA&ab_channel=GreenForest%7CLearningEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gNDfZ1W2BUo&ab_channel=LearnEnglishwithRebecca%C2%B7engVid

Exercise 1. Rewrite the sentences in the passive voice

1. They are going to paint the house tomorrow. 2. She cleans the office every evening at 5:00. 3. Volunteers are planting trees in the forest. 4. They hold the Summer Olympics every four years. 5. Did they discover America in 1492? 6. They have closed the road due to an oil spill. 7. He sent the party invitations yesterday afternoon. 8. They will award him a Nobel prize. 9. Has she watered the plants? 10. They saw a dolphin swimming in the sea. 11. You should handle this package carefully. 12. They include tax in the bill.

Exercise 2. Open the brackets

The remains of an Anglo-Saxon ship 1) (discover) by archaeologists digging on the Kent coast last week. As it was common in Anglo-Saxon England, it 2)

(think) that the ship 3) (bury) alongside a great warrior. Although none of the original wood from the ship remains. many items, including weapons and helmets 4) (find). These finds 5) (now/examine) by experts at the University of Kent. Afterwards the items 6) (clean) so that they can (display) in the British Museum in London.

Exercise 3. Turn the following into the passive

1. The police officer gave me a ticket. 2. The waiter is serving them dinner now. 3. The teacher won't show him his marks. 4. Ken offered Janet a ride. 5. Miss Price has taught a new rule. 6. They should have ordered you a taxi. 7. The cashier gave me a receipt. 8. Mrs Harris sent the company a letter of complaint.

Exercise 4. Change from the passive to the active

1. The witnesses may be questioned by the police. 2. The missing person was located by the private detective. 3. Our leaking roof is being fixed by the builders. 4. Dinosaur remains have been found by a team of archaeologists. 5. You will be protected by a bodyguard 24 hours a day. 6. Several members of the class were punished by the teacher. 7. The award is being presented by a famous scientist. 8. She likes her paintings being admired. 9. This matter must be attended to immediately! 10. Your flight may be delayed by a strike.

Exercise 5. Read the situations, then write sentences using the causative form

1. Our house is small. We need to build an extension. What should we do? 2. Liz is at the beauty parlour. The beautician is painting her nails. What is she doing? 3. Robert has written a novel and it will be published. What will Robert do? 4. A jeweller has made a special ring for Ann. What has Ann done? 5. Simon's suits are all made by a tailor. What does Simon do? 6. Sonia is going to the optician for an eye test tomorrow. What's she going to do? 7. The grass has grown too high. What should they have done? 8. His tooth was taken out yesterday. What happened to him?

Exercise 6. Transform the sentences

1. My light broke last night. I ... (fix).
2. I finished my essay. I ... (mark).
3. The house is looking very dirty. I(clean).
4. My back is very sore. I ... (massage).
5. My hair is getting too long. I ...(cut).
6. Mark's car is in bad condition! He(repair).
7. Jenny can't bake a cake for her party. She(cater). I've made an appointment at the hairdresser's for next Monday. I'm next Monday. (my hair / cut)

9. Builders checked our roof after the storm. We after the storm. (our roof / check)
10. Some bricklayers are building a wall for our neighbours. Our neighbours are (a wall / build)
11. My brother is going to the dentist next week. The dentist is going to pull my brother's tooth out. My brother is next week. (his tooth / pull out)
12. An electrician installed a burglar alarm for us in October. We ... in October. (an alarm / install)
13. The doctors removed David's tonsils when he was eleven. David when he was eleven. (his tonsils / remove)

Exercise 7. Choose correct variant

1. We are planning to have our flat ... this year. A) to paint B) painted C) paint D) painting
2. She needs to ... a molar tooth filled this afternoon. A) do B) let C) get D) make
3. We last ... the carpets ... a year ago; they now look dirty again. A) got / clean B) get / cleaned C) have / clean D) had / cleaned
4. Lucy ... her hair ... when I saw her at the hairdresser's. A) had / do B) was having / done C) has been having / done D) got / doing
5. Tom ... all his shirts and trousers ... because he was going abroad on business for a month. A) got / ironed B) let / iron C) had / ironing D) made / to iron
6. Jonathan never ... his shoes ... and always wears awful clothes. A) got / polishes B) had / polished C) has / polished D) gets / to polish
7. They ... their old house ... yet because they still don't have enough money. A) shouldn't get / renovating B) mustn't have / renovate C) needn't have had / renovated D) can't get / renovated
8. You ... your eyes ... at least twice a year because eye health is very important. A) need to have / testing B) must have / tested C) can get / to test D) had to get / tested
9. If you don't want your dog to have fleas, you ... it ... regularly. A) can have / vaccinate B) should have got / vaccinated C) ought to get / to vaccinate D) had better have / vaccinated
10. I don't need to go to the hairdresser's ... my hair ... because I do it myself at home. A) having / dying B) to get / dyed C) having / dye D) to get / to dye
11. Spencer always ... his suits ... by a tailor because he can't find any in his size. A) has to get / made B) might have / made C) needs to get / make D) had to have / to make
12. Why ... you ... a burglar alarm ... in your house yet? This is a dangerous neighbourhood. A) didn't ... get / install B) don't ... have / to install C) haven't ... had / installed D) hadn't ... got / installing

13. I have forgotten ... the broken tap ... again. A) having / to fix B) to have / fixing C) having / fixing D) to have / fixed
14. I think you ... those rashes on your hand ... by a physician immediately. A) should have / examined B) had better get / examining C) used to get / examined D) could have / examining

Exercise 8. Use correct Article

1. Do you have... bigger room in the hotel? In fact, I'd like ... biggest room you have available. How much would that cost ...night?
2. Honestly, this is last time I am going to tell you to clean up your room. You are messiest kid on the planet.
3. He's much fitter person than I am; he jogs at least five times ... week.
4. Fred always says dogs make ... best pets. But between his cat and his dog, his cat is ... more loyal of the two.
5. I think this is ...worst idea you have ever had. We need to find ... better way to do this.
6. Tomorrow, we will take ...second train from Suzhou to Shanghai, and .. following day, we will fly to Beijing.
7. That brand of organic coffee costs \$85 ... pound! That's ... most outrageous price I've ever seen. I think I need to look for .. cheaper brand.
8. The computer science instructor thought Fikret was ... more gifted programmer than most professionals she had worked with. In fact, she told me he was ... most gifted programmer she had taught in many years.
9. I bought ... lightest backpacking tent the company makes. It's made of ... much stronger material than my last tent.
10. Last week was ... first time that I had ever played golf, and I really felt like I was ... worst player ever. But this week, I played with my boss and he's ... even worse player than I am. It may be shocking, but between me and my boss, I think I am actually ... better player.

Exercise 9. Put in the correct preposition

1. The school provides all its students ... books.
2. A strange thing happened ...me a few days ago.
3. Mark decided to give up sport so that he could concentrate ...his studies.
4. I don't believe ...working very hard. It's not worth it.
5. My present job isn't wonderful, but I prefer it ...what I did before.
6. I hope you succeed ...getting what you want.
7. As I was coming out of the room, I collided ...somebody who was coming in.
8. There was an awful noise as the car crashed ...a tree.
9. Jim is a photographer. He specializes ...sports photography.
10. Do you spend much money ...clothes?
11. The country is divided ...six regions.
12. I prefer travelling by train ...driving. It's much more pleasant.

13. Somebody broke ...my car and stole the radio.
14. I felt quite cold but Peter insisted ...having the window open.
15. Some words are difficult to translate ...one language another.
16. What happened ...the money I lent you? What did you spend it?
17. The teacher decided to split the class ...four groups.
18. I filled the tank but unfortunately I filled it ... the wrong kind of petrol.

Exercise 10. Use correct Tenses

1. What (Helen, do) for the last two hours? - She (prepare) for next week's meeting; she (dust) the furniture now.
2. His sister (be) in Australia six times and I (be) there twice.
3. We (live) in Johannesburg since World War II and so far we (never, intend) to leave the country, but the situation (turn) so bad that we (decide) to go back to Austria.
4. We must wake her. She (sleep) for 15 hours.
5. How many customers (Sally, call) last week?
6. Some time ago Mr Pale (ask) me to lend him some money.
7. Demonstrators (block) the road for three hours.
8. When (you, switch) on the light today?
9. I could not answer the door because I (have) a shower.
10. No, we (not be) here before.

Homework 1. Change into Passive

1. I bought some potatoes yesterday.
2. We'll bring the books tomorrow.
3. They are repairing the clock now.
4. They sell milk in this shop.
5. I have translated the whole text.
6. They broke the window last week.
7. When I came home, they had eaten the sweets.
8. We'll do the work in the evening.
9. He wrote this book in the 19th century.
10. They were playing tennis from four till five.
11. He stole a lot of money from the shop.
12. By six o'clock they had finished the work.
13. At twelve o'clock the workers were loading the trucks.
14. By three o'clock the workers had loaded the trucks.
15. We send our daughter to rest in the south every year.
16. They will show this film on TV.
17. They are building a new concert-hall in our street.
18. They have made a number of important experiments in this laboratory.
19. Livingstone explored Central Africa in the 19th century.
20. By the middle of autumn we had planted all the trees.
21. They will stage this play at the beginning of next season.
22. They have forgotten the story.
23. Has anybody explained the rules of the game to you?
24. They haven't brought back my skates.
- 25.. The students greeted the famous lecturer warmly.
26. They have recently built a huge plant, in the town of N.
27. We must finish the work by tomorrow.
28. When I fell ill, my mother sent for the doctor.
29. They looked for the girl everywhere.
30. They did not listen to the boy.
31. She looks after the patients well.
32. They asked for our address.
33. A friend of his has shown me an interesting magazine.
34. His

friend told him everything. 35. They showed Helen the nearest way to the theatre.

Homework 2. Rewrite the following sentences using the grammar construction HAVE + OBJECT + PAST PARTICIPLE, changing some words where necessary.

1. We ask someone to check the accounts every month. - We every month.

2. Someone sends the money to my bank account in London. - I have to my bank account in London.

3. My stereo isn't working properly. It needs cleaning. - I'm going to

4. My camera's being repaired at the moment. - I'm at the moment.

5. Someone delivers the newspapers. - We

6. Someone cleaned the carpets every year. - I every year.

7. Their house need painting. - They are going to

8. I think it's time to service the car. - It's time to

9. I don't like the office curtains. I'm going to ask someone to change them. - I think I'll

10. There's something wrong with the computer. - I think I'll

Additional exercise 1. Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets in the appropriate form

A: Hi, Lisa. What are you doing in town today? B: I 1) (my car/service) at the moment. It will be ready in an hour, so I 2) (some photographs/ develop) while I wait. What about you? A: Well, right now, we 3) (our roof/fix) so I decided to spend the morning in the city centre. An hour ago, I 4) . (my nails/ paint) at the beautician's , and later this afternoon, I 5) (my hair/cut). B: Lucky you! Well, I'd better go to the garage. See you later!

Additional exercise 2. Use Active Voice with any suitable subject

1. This mountain has never been climbed before. 2. She told me that those newspapers had been carefully put away where they would not be lost. 3. Why have these cups been put here in this cupboard? 4. Nick was told to go home at once. 5. Invitations have been sent to all the alumni to be present at the school's thirtieth anniversary. 6. All the passengers in the bus were listening to the story of the boy who had been saved from drowning by the quickness of the driver. 7. The work was finished in time. 8. The child is taken care of. 9. When was it done? 10. What museums were visited last year? 11. Have your compositions been handed in? 12. What has been said is true. 13. After the facts had been thoroughly explained to her, she no longer felt worried. 14. He was fined for crossing the street in the wrong place. 15. The Greeks were attacked by the Persians from the sea. 16. This book must be read by every student. 17. This film can be seen at our cinema. 18. Spartan children were taught by their parents to endure all hardships. 19. Which article was translated by your brother? 20. They were being taught drawing at that lesson. 21. This name was seldom

mentioned in his novels. 22. I am often told about it. 23. This man has been much spoken of.

Revision test. Circle the correct item

1. The table was made a carpenter.
A by B with C from
2. A jewellery shop ... last night.
A was broken into B has been broken into C had been broken into
3. The flowers need once a day.
A to being watered B to be watered C been watered
4. The building by a French architect.
A will design B will be designed C will be designing
5. The omelette was made mushrooms and cheese.
A by B with C from
6. The letter must ... immediately.
A be sent B being sent C to be sent
7. Lisa likes flowers.
A being given B been given C to being given
8. Breakfast at 8 o'clock every day.
A was serve B is served C has been served

THEME 1.8. MODALS. USED TO, WOULD

Theoretical background. Grammar Way, pp. 70-72, 74-75, 78. English Grammar, cc.72-90, In Use, units 26-36, Round-up-6, pp. 33-44.

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ck-lvYFBbY&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

Exercise 1. Use the active or the passive in any appropriate form of the verbs in brackets

1. The children (frighten) by the story. It was about ghosts, witches and evil spirits. 2. This newspaper (publish) by an Italian company. It (always/have) interesting stories. 3. Yesterday we had a surprise party for Albert's birthday. While Mary (take) him to a show, we (gather) at his flat. When they (return) home, Albert was surprised to see us all there. 4. Rice (grow) in this area for hundreds of years, but now the government (try) to find an alternative crop because rice (not/make) much profit last year. 5. The scandal (report) in all the newspapers. 6. My shoes (make) in Italy, but I (buy) them in France last May.

Exercise 2. Rephrase the following using have, make or get

1. He insisted that John should finish the report. 2. She persuaded her husband to cut the grass. 3. He asked the maid to make his bed. 4. He insisted that the gardener should water the flowers. 5. The teacher asked them to rewrite the exercise. 6. The boss insisted that the secretary should type the letters. 7. Their new carpets were fitted yesterday. 8. She persuaded John to help her tidy the room.

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences

1. A mosquito bit Sarah while she was sleeping. Sarah .. while she was sleeping. 2. The strong winds have broken a window in the old house. been A window in the old house ... the strong winds. 3. Somebody took Henry's wallet from his pocket when he wasn't looking. Henry ... from his pocket when he wasn't looking. 4. Lisa's winter coat needs cleaning. Lisa needs ... cleaned. 5. Ben's mother insisted that he wash his hands before dinner. Ben ... his hands before dinner by his mother.

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=BT3JbwlpQxU&ab_channel=EnglishwithLucy

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=5Dq7lEw7CKM&ab_channel=LearnEnglishwithRebecca%C2%B7engVid

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1PY6xIDkIj4&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

[https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Nk9nQwoCFig&ab_channel=7ESLLearnin
gEnglish](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Nk9nQwoCFig&ab_channel=7ESLLearnin
gEnglish)

[https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=0HBffV9DB90&ab_channel=10EnglishQui
z](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=0HBffV9DB90&ab_channel=10EnglishQui
z)

Exercise 1. Underline the correct word(s)

1.A: Could / May / Shall you tell me where the post office is, please? B: Certainly. It's down the street on the right. 2 A: You mustn't / needn't / couldn't vacuum the carpet. B: Oh, have you done it already? 3.A: Are you free on Saturday morning? B: No, I have to / can / shall go into the office for a couple of hours. 4. A: Shall / Will / Would I get you a glass of water from the kitchen? B: Yes, please. And may / could / shall you put some ice in it, too? 5 A: I want to pass the driving test this year. B: You didn't need to / should / needn't take some more lessons. 6. A: Can / Shall / Would I have some ice cream, please? B: Yes, of course. What flavour would you like? 7. A: Where's Frank? Is he usually this late? B: Not at all. He ought / must / need to be here by now. 8. A: I threw your old books into the recycling bin. B: Oh, no! You mustn't / shouldn't / can't have done that. I need some of them for school.

Exercise 2. Fill in: can, can't, could, couldn't, was/wasn't able to or had been able to

1.He ...run much faster when he was younger. 2. On entering the house, she ...smell something burning in the kitchen. 3. I'm busy today, so I ... go shopping with you. 4. I heard Brian's voice, but I ... see him until I turned on the lights. 5. When I lived on the coast, I ... swim in the sea every day. 6. If Gordon ... avoid the rush hour traffic, he would have arrived at the party on time. 7. I'm not usually very good at tennis, but yesterday I ... beat my brother in a match. 8. He ... fix the tap, so he called a plumber. 9. I had my hands full, so I ... open the door. 10. Angela is very clever. She ... speak four languages.

Exercise 3. Fill in: must or have to

1.Bill: Hi, Alan. Why weren't you at the meeting this morning? Alan: I had a doctor's appointment. So, what did I miss? Bill: Well, Mr Newton, the new factory owner, said that we 1)wear overalls at all times. Also, he wants us to arrive at 8 am and we 2) ... clock in. Alan: What about overtime? Bill: There is a possibility of working overtime but you 3) ... decide whether you want to work extra hours. Alan: Did he say anything about break times? I hope we don't 4) clock in and out every time we have a break. Bill: No, we don't, but Mr Newton insists that we 5) ... have fifteen-minute breaks every three or four hours. Like before, we 6) ... choose when we would like to take those breaks. Alan: I see. And did he say anything about the parking? I think it's terrible that the company says we 7) use the public car park. It's too far away. Bill: 18)

.... say I agree with you, Alan, but he didn't say anything. We 9) ... bring it to the attention of the personnel department sometime.

Exercise 4. Fill in the gaps with mustn't or needn't/don't have to

1.A: Shall I help you clean the car? B: No, thanks. You ... help me. I can do it myself. 2. A: Tell Claire and Sam that they ... drive us to the party. Nathan's offered to take us. B: No problem. I'll tell them tonight when I see them. 3. A: You ... touch the statues in the museum. B: I know. It's forbidden. 4. A: Tell George that he ... forget to pay the electricity bill today. B: OK. I will. 5. A: You ... be late for your appointment tomorrow morning. B: Don't worry. I won't. 6. A: I'm going to the shops. Do you want anything? B: No. You ... get me anything. I've just been.

Exercise 5. Choose the correct answer.

1. I (didn't use / to used to) live in this city.
2. We (wouldn't / didn't used to) often go on holiday.
3. When I was a child, we (used to/ would) have a dog.
4. She (used to work / worked) as a teacher for many years.
5. As a student, he never (used to/would) have any money.
6. Did you (use to / used to) like playing football at school?
7. There never (use to be /used to be) a coffee shop here.
8. My dad (would / use to) always read to me before bed.

Exercise 6. For each of the following sentences, choose either "used to" or "would". If both are possible, use "would"

1. Do you remember how your Uncle David ... sit in that chair and smoke those disgusting cigars.
2. Your mother ... have a Yorkshire Terrier when she was a young girl, didn't she?
3. For years, they ... go on holiday to the Rockies, but then it became very fashionable and, hence, expensive.
4. Years ago, I ... write a diary every day but then I got bored with doing it and I stopped. Maybe it was my life that was boring!
5. At the start of their marriage, they ... be very happy - but then it all went wrong!
6. You spell so well. Whatever happened?
7. When I was five, I be able to do incredible gymnastics. Now I can't even touch my toes.
8. Before getting my driving licence, I ... ride a bicycle everywhere.

Exercise 7. Complete each sentence with the correct form of *used to* and the verbs below

be have not have not use not want

- 1 She ... married, but she isn't married any more.

- 2 He short hair, but now it's really short!
- 3 In the past, people ... social media, but now they use it all the time.
- 4 'You ... a motorbike, did you?' No, but I want one now.'
- 5 My favourite actor ... a moustache, but he shaved it off.
- 6 I'm not scared of spiders, but I ... when I was younger.

Exercise 8. Choose the correct answers (a or b) to complete the text BEFORE THEY BECAME FAMOUS

Before they became famous, many celebrities 1)... have the superstar lifestyles we associate with them today. Glamorous actress and three-time Oscar nominee Amy Adams 2)... as a waitress when she was eighteen. And when Brad Pitt was employed by restaurant chain El Pollo Loco, he 3)... to dress as a chicken and wave at passing cars. Rapper and fashion icon Kanye West 4) ...own such chic outfits when he worked for Gap, folding clothes. And Barack Obama 5)..... one summer serving ice cream in Honolulu, Hawaii. Apparently the ice cream was so hard that it 6)... make his wrists hurt, and he confesses that, of course, he 7)... eat too much ice cream, so he doesn't like it any more!

1. a wouldn't b didn't use to
2. a would work b used to work
3. a used b would
4. a didn't use to b wouldn't
5. a spent b used to spend
6. a wouldn't b used to
7. a would b used to

Exercise 9. Complete the sentences to suggest criticism using *would* and a verb from the box: have insist leave run spend

1. I warned her not to swim in that river, but she ... on doing it.
2. I didn't want to complain about my neighbours, but they ... such noisy parties.
3. It's hardly surprising she failed her exams – she ... so much time reading magazines.
4. I spent weeks trying to train my dog, but it ... off whenever we went out.
5. My grandfather was so vain! In spite of his poor eyesight, he ... the house without his glasses.

Most people outside ... United States have never heard of ...Great Serpent Mound in ... Adams County, Ohio. One of ... most mysterious monuments in ... America, ... mound is ... ancient Native American construction built to look like ... snake. While there are ... mounds built in many parts of . Midwest and South, not many look like ... animals. Researchers refer to this type of mound as ."effigy mound". Over 1,348 feet long, scientists agree it's ... very impressive monument, but there is disagreement over who

built structure. Some people think Adena people built ... mound; others think it was ... Fort Ancient culture.

1. Three students were suspected of cheating in the examination.
2. Sally is often not well. She suffers ... very bad headaches.
3. You know that you can rely ...me if you ever need any help.
4. It is terrible that some people are dying ...hunger while others eat too much.
5. Are you going to apologize ...what you did?
6. The accident was my fault, so I had to pay ...the damage.
7. I didn't have enough money to pay ...the bill.
8. I complimented her ...her English. She spoke fluently and made very few mistakes.
9. She hasn't got a job. She depends ...her parents for money.
10. I don't know whether I'll go out tonight. It depends ...how I feel.
11. They wore warm clothes to protect themselves ...the cold.
12. The apartment consists ...three rooms, a kitchen and bathroom.

1. Do you like reading? - Yes , I ... ten books this year (already read).
2. A few days ago Dad ... his car in front of a *No Parking* sign and ... into the shop. When he .. out ten minutes later the car was no longer there. He ... if someone ... it or if the police ... it away. (park, rush, come, wonder, steal, drive)
3. For the last two years he ... a history of the American Civil War. (write)
4. You look very upset. - What ...? (happen).
5. When we arrived at the stadium, the match ... (already start)
6. When we went to see them last night they ... cars. They said they ... cards since six o'clock.(play, play)
7. I am so sorry that I ...to leave the party so early yesterday because I ... myself (have, really enjoy)
8. Can't you hear? - Someone ... at the door . - ... it? - No, I ... in a minute. - I ... out of the bath (knock, you answer, go, just step).
9. The boys ... cards when they heard their father's steps. At once, they ... the cards and ... out their workbooks (play, hide, take)
10. These workers are never satisfied. They ... (always complain) everything that the newspapers say? - No, I ... any of it. - Then why ... newspapers at all? (you believe, not believe, you read)
10. My aunt normally ... any cakes but today she ... one because her sister ... tomorrow (not bake, bake, arrive)
11. The sun ... in the east and ... in the west (rise, set).
12. I went into the garden to see what the boys ... (do).
13. Who ... to when I came in ? - Oh , I ... on the phone with my landlord. (you talk, be)
14. I ... the results tomorrow morning (get)

15. I went into Jack's house but I ... him anywhere. His mother .. what he ... at that time (not find, not know, do)

16. We ... for a full hour when the train finally arrived. (wait)

Homework 1. Use Modals

1. You ... not come to help them tomorrow: the work is done. 2. You ... not change the whole text as the beginning is all right. You ... only rewrite the second part of it. 3. ... you help me now? — I am afraid not: I am in a great hurry. I shall be free in the evening. Come to my place at about eight, and I ... help you. 4. John ... not tell us the rules of the game: we know them. 5. ... I return the book to you on Friday? I am afraid I ... not finish it before. — No, that is too late. You ... bring it to me not later than Wednesday. 6. It is already six o'clock. We ... hurry if we don't want to be late. 7. ... you translate this text into English? — I think I ... 8. They spent all the morning on the river bank. Only Ann ... return home as she ... not stay in the sun for such a long time. 9. If you want to improve your English, you ... work very hard. 10. ... I take this book? — Certainly, but you ... not give it to anybody. 11. Mother, ... I go to the country tomorrow? — No, you ... not. The doctor says you ... stay at home for a day or two. 12. There is something wrong with your television-set. You ... call a repairman. — Oh, we ... not do, it! My brother ... fix it himself. 13. ... we bring these text-books every day? — No, you ... not: you ... take them from the library. 14. ... you go to the country with us? — No, I am afraid I ... not: I ... go to the library. 15. You ... not (to go) out in this rain; as it is you have a cold in your head. 16. It was Sunday, and we ... not (to go) to school. 17. Everything is all right. You see that you ... not (to worry). 18. You are out of breath. You ... not (to run): you know how bad it is for you. 19. You ... not (to tell) her about it. Now she is sure not to sleep the whole night worrying. 20. You ... not (to go) with her: she knows the way perfectly well. 21. You ... not (to put) so much pepper in the meat. No one will be able to eat it. 22. You ... not (to give) them any lunch. They can get coffee and sandwiches on the train.

Homework 2. 1. Complete the dialogue with the correct form of used to (affirmative, negative or interrogative).

Brandon You see that house on the corner? My dad ... live there with his parents.

Millie Really? It's huge! ... your family ... be rich?

Brandon I suppose so. My grandparents ... run a department store.

Millie ... there ... be a department store in this town?

Brandon Yes. But it closed twenty years ago.

Millie Why did it close?

Brandon I don't know. My grandparents ... talk about it very much.

Replace *used to* with *would* in these sentences, where possible

1. My grandfather never used to go out without a hat.

2. We used to live in Washington, D.C.
3. I used to go to the sweet shop every afternoon.
4. We didn't use to talk our parents about school.
5. When Harriet was young, she used to go dancing every night.
6. Our dog used to be scared of cats.

Choose the correct answers

1. I practise the guitar every day, but
A didn't use to B wouldn't C used to
2. Joe hates eggs, but he ... them.
A would like B used to like C didn't like
3. When Elsie was young, she ... ballet lessons twice a week for ten years.
A 'd go to B used to go to C went to
4. I don't let my dog in my room now because it ... stop jumping on my bed.
A wouldn't B didn't use to C would
5. My neighbour ... Adele's piano teacher.
A 'd be B would be C used to be
6. I love Mr Bean now, but I ... him funny.
A wouldn't find B never used to find C didn't find

Additional exercise 1. Read the situation and write what you would say, using could, should, might, ought to, don't have to, have to, must or may, and the correct tense of the infinitive.

1. Mark lied to his teacher and, when she found out, she was very angry. What do you say to him?
2. A student has just come into the class and left the door open. It's noisy outside. What do you say to him?
3. Your father wants to know where your sister is. You think she is playing football in the garden. What do you say to your father?
4. Your friend failed an exam at school. He hadn't studied at all. What do you say to him?
5. Your friend always looks tired. You're sure this is because she doesn't get enough sleep. What do you say to her?
6. Your friend wants to buy you a gift for your birthday. You think it's not necessary. What do you say to her?
7. Your friend can't find her mobile phone. You think she left it in the car. What do you say to her?
8. Steve was very rude to Kim and didn't apologise to her. What do you say to him?

Additional exercise 2. Choose correct variant

Dear Claire, I'm writing to ask if you 1) could / might give me some advice. I'm a 20-year-old student who 2) shall / has to survive on the money my parents send me. My family lives in a small village but when I succeeded in my exams, 3) ought to / had to move to Leeds to attend university. My parents are over 60 and 4) can / shall no longer work. I feel like I 5) may / ought to be giving them money to help them instead of getting money from them. On top of that, my sister is leaving school next year and she 6) will / must want to go to university, too. I feel I 7) might / ought to do something to help her as well. I suppose I 8)

must / shall try to get a job but I 9) mustn't / can't think of what I 10) can / shall do. It 11) needs to / might be a good idea to work nights so that I can study during the day. You see, I 12) must / can attend all my lectures or I 13) should / will fail my course. Of course I 14) could / may leave university but I don't want to. I 15) need to / was able to do something soon but what? Please advise me. What 16) had better / should I do?

Revision test. Choose the most appropriate response.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Would you mind posting this letter for me? | Yes, you may.
Not at all. |
| 2. Will you help me with the laundry, please? | Yes, I may.
Certainly. |
| 3. We could order a pizza tonight. | That's a good idea. |
| 4. Could you pick me up at the train station, please? | No, we might not.
No, you couldn't. |
| 5. Can I borrow your pen, please? | Yes, of course. |
| 6. Would you please reply to these emails? | I'd be happy to.
Yes, I would. |
| 7. Shall I open the window? | No, you won't. |
| 8. Can I park here? | No, it's okay, thanks.
No, you can't.
No, thank you |

THEME 1.9. NON-FINITE FORMS. MODALS WITH PERFECT INFINITIVE

Theoretical Background. English Grammar, cc.97-107 Grammar Way, pp. 30-34; English Grammar, cc.91-97. Round Up pp.21-28

Video https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=yC1Y-Pkp2Wc&ab_channel=Rockin%27EnglishLessons

Exercise 1. Insert suitable Modals.

1. I don't want anyone to know. You ... tell anyone. 2 He doesn't ... to wear a suit to work but he usually does. 3. I can stay in bed tomorrow morning because I ... go to work. 4. Whatever you do, you ... touch that switch. It's very dangerous. 5. There's a lift in the building, so we ... climb the stairs. 6. You ... forget what I told you. It's very important. 7. Sue ... get up early. She gets up early because she wants to. 8. Don't make so much noise. We ... wake the baby. 9. I ... eat too much. I'm supposed to be on a diet. 10. You ... be a good player to enjoy a game of tennis.

Exercise 2. Choose suitable Modals

If you love sea animals, then you really 1) should/might visit SeaWorld in San Diego, California. At SeaWorld, you 2) can/must swim with one of the most beautiful creatures on earth: the bottlenose dolphin. Imagine feeding a group of these playful animals lunch and then taking hold of their fins and swimming beside them! Lucky visitors 3) ought to/may even receive a dolphin kiss! After the dolphin pool, you 4) may/should be eager to see even more sea animals. If that's the case, you 5) ought to/shall visit the bat ray pool. There you 6) can/must handle and feed hundreds of hungry Californian bat rays! Animal lovers 7) mustn't/needn't miss the underwater Shark Tunnel. In it, you can see hundreds of shark species swimming silently above you - a truly amazing sight. So remember to go to SeaWorld if you are ever in California. It's one day out you will never forget!

Exercise 3. Read the situations and write what you would say using should, ought to, could, might

1. Your close friend lied to you and when you found out you were very upset. What do you tell your friend? 2. Adam can't find his mobile phone. You think he left it in the car. What do you say to him? 3. Your brother failed his driving test because he didn't practise enough. What do you tell him? 4. Your friend is always late for school because she wakes up late. What do you say to her? 5. Your sister wore your new jacket without asking you. What do you say to her? 6. Yesterday you waited for your friend for over an hour at the library and he didn't even call to say he wasn't coming. What do you say to him?

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UlukkQPRBj0&ab_channel=%D0%A0%D0%B5%D0%BF%D0%B5%D1%82%D0%B8%D1%82%D0%BE%D1%80%D0%90%D0%BD%D0%B3%D0%BB%D1%96%D0%B9%D1%81%D1%8C%D0%BA%D0%BE%D1%97

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=87J_vhaeb74&ab_channel=NewModelforLearningEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=xd3YUo0rgZg&ab_channel=EnglishwithEmma%C2%B7engVid

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=iGqE1np8W4U&ab_channel=SerhiiSydorenko

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=C5AvDdeEx48&ab_channel=EnglishThroughVideos

<https://www.perfect-english-grammar.com/could-have-should-have-would-have-exercise-1.html>

Exercise 1. Fill in the correct form of the infinitives

1. My boss expects me ... (work) overtime tonight. 2. The suspect claimed (work) at the time of the robbery. 3. I was sorry (hear) that she had failed the exam. 4. The burglars must have come in through the window as the lock seems (force). 5. "Robert appears (overtake) John on the last lap." "Yes, he's passed him!" 6. Mike was the last runner (finish) the marathon. 7. I'd like (book) a return ticket to London, please. 8. Stop pretending (eat) your food - just finish it up, please. 9. It was very kind of Paula (lend) me her laptop. 10. Leslie seems (enjoy) her new job. 11. Kim plans (start) her own business after she graduates. 12. Jane appears (get) annoyed with her neighbour now. 13. I hate (to bother) you, but the students are still waiting (to give) books for their work. 14. He seized every opportunity (to appear) in public: he was so anxious (to talk) about. 15. Is there anything else (to tell) her? I believe she deserves (to know) the state of her sick brother. 16. He began writing books not because he wanted (to earn) a living. He wanted (to read) and not (to forget). 17. I consider myself lucky (to be) to that famous exhibition and (to see) so many wonderful paintings. 18. He seems (to know) French very well: he is said (to spend) his youth in Paris. 19. The enemy army was reported (to overthrow) the defense lines and (to advance) towards the suburbs of the city. 20. The woman pretended (to read) and (not to hear) the bell. 21. You seem (to look) for trouble. 22. It seemed (to snow) heavily since early morning: the ground was covered with a deep layer of snow. 23. They seemed (to quarrel): I could hear angry voices from behind the door. 24. Perhaps it would upset her (to tell) the truth of the matter. 25. They are supposed (to work) at the problem for the last two months. 26. The only sound

(to hear) was the snoring of grandfather in the bedroom. 27. Her ring was believed (to lose) until she happened (to find) it during the general cleaning. It turned out (to drop) between the sofa and the wall. 28. They seemed (to wait) for ages.

Exercise 2. Use Infinitives

1. There are no books which I can read. 2. Is there anybody who will help you with your spelling? 3. Don't forget that she has a baby which she must take care of. 4. Have you got nothing that you want to say on this subject? 5. There was nothing that he could do except go home. 6. I have only a few minutes in which I can explain these words to you. 7. I have an examination which I must take soon, so I can't go to the theatre with you. 8. King Lear decided to have a hundred knights who would serve him after he had divided up his kingdom. 9. Here is something which will warm you up. 10. Here is a new brush which you will clean your teeth with. 11. Here are some more facts which will prove that your theory is correct. 12. Here is something which you can rub on your hands. It will soften them. 13. Here are some screws with which you can fasten the shelves to the wall. 14. Here are some tablets which will relieve your headache. 15. Here are some articles which must be translated for tomorrow. 16. Who has a pen or a pencil to spare? I need something I could write with. 17. I have brought you a book which you can read now but be sure and return it by Saturday. 18. Soon we found that there was another complicated problem that we were to consider. 19. The girl was quite young when both her parents died, and she remained alone with two younger brothers whom she had to take care of.

Exercise 3. Fill in the gaps with the -ing form of the verb in brackets

1. Why do you avoid (to speak) to me? 2. She tried to avoid (to speak) to. 3. The doctor insisted on (to send) the sick man to hospital. 4. The child insisted on (to send) home at once. 5. Do you mind his (to examine) by a heart specialist? 6. He showed no sign of (to recognize) me. 7. She showed no sign of (to surprise). 8. He had a strange habit of (to interfere) in other people's business. 9. I was angry at (to interrupt) every other moment. 10. He was always ready for (to help) people. 11. He was very glad of (to help) in his difficulty. 12. On (to allow) to leave the room the children immediately ran out into the yard and began (to play). 13. In (to make) this experiment they came across some very interesting phenomena. 14. The results of the experiment must be checked before (to publish). 15. David was tired of (to scold) all the time. 16. The watch requires (to repair). 17. The problem is not worth (to discuss). 18. Jane Eyre remembered (to lock) up in the red room for (to contradict) Mrs. Reed.

Exercise 4. Use correct forms

1. The pleasant-faced middle-aged woman insisted that Olga should come to her town to teach (on). 2. Helen suggested that they should go on a trip. 3. There is a

possibility that my father will join us for the trip (of). 4. The girls knew that the sportsman had been awarded a prize (of). 5. I don't mind if you walk to the underground station with me. 6. When they entered the house, they heard the last bell ringing (on). 7. Thank you that you invited me to the theatre (for). 8. The woman insisted that her husband should consult the doctor at once (on). 9. She could not even think that the operation might be postponed (of). 10. There was little hope that James would return on the same day (of). 11. The thought that he had been turned away by the doorkeeper made him feel miserable (of).

Exercise 5. Choose the correct gerunds and infinitives to complete the sentences below

1. I would like (being loved /to be loved /to love) by someone.
2. The portrait is thought (to have been painted / to be painted / to be painting) in 1595.
3. The student apologised for (hack / having hacked / being hacked) into his teacher's Twitter account.
4. She was the first woman (to elect / to be elected/ being elected) president.
5. It's no use (to try / try / trying)to escape. This is a maximum security prison.
6. I certainly won't miss (being bullied / to be bullied / bullying) by him.
7. You are not supposed (being doing / to be doing /to been doing) this now.
8. I'd love (to have seen / to be seen / to be seeing) last night's performance.
9. He denied (stealing / having been stolen / to have stolen) the money.
10. Convicts can choose how (to execute / to be executed / being executed), either by lethal injection or by electric chair.

Exercise 6. Use Must have - Might have - Should have - Can't have

1. John ... gone on holiday. I saw him this morning downtown.
2. Nobody answered the phone at the clinic. It ... closed early.
3. I ... revised more for my exams. I think I'll fail!
4. Sarah looks really pleased with herself. She ... passed her driving test this morning.
5. I didn't know you were going to Phil's party yesterday. You ... told me!
6. I can't believe Jim hasn't arrived yet. He ... caught the wrong train.
7. I can't believe Jim hasn't arrived yet. He ... caught the correct train.
8. Don't lie to me that you were ill yesterday. You ... been ill - Don said you were at the ice hockey match last night.
9. I don't know where they went on holiday but they bought Euros before they left so they ... gone to France or Germany.
10. His number was busy all night - he ... been on the phone continuously for hours.
11. It ... been Mickey I saw at the party. He didn't recognise me at all.

Exercise 7. Complete each sentence B so that it has a similar meaning to sentence A

1. A : I'm sure schools 50 years ago weren't the same as they are nowadays (be)
B : Schools 50 years ago ... very different from nowadays.

2. A : It's possible Josef went to school by bus. (take)
B : Josef the bus to school.
3. A : I'm sure their holiday wasn't very nice because the weather was so bad (have).
B : With such terrible weather, they ... a very nice holiday.
4. A : I wonder if Jane remembers how to get here (forget).
B : Jane how to get here.
5. A : I'm sure Chloe isn't still looking for her watch (find).
B : Chloe ... her watch by now.
6. A : We are going in the wrong direction (miss).
B : Yes, we a turning.
7. A : Shakespeare and Voltaire weren't alive at the same time, so they definitely never met (know).
B : Shakespeare and Voltaire weren't alive at the same time, so they ... each other.
8. A : Alison looks happy about her exam results, so she's certainly done well (do)
B : Alison looks happy about her exam results, so she ... well.
9. A : I'm not sure its right to blame Ray for that mistake (make).
B : Ray ... that mistake.
10. A : Joe can't open the door . Maybe he can't remember where he put the key (lose)
B : Joe can't open the door. He ... the key.

Exercise 8. A: Excuse me, do you know if there's...subway station around here? I'm supposed to meet...couple of friends at...restaurant near... Chrysler Building. B: Actually, ...closest subway station is...little far from here. Do you have...map? A: No, I don't. I just have...smartphone, but unfortunately, ...battery is dead. What am I going to do? I need to be there at...noon. B: Do you know...name of...restaurant? A: No, I don't. I remember it's...Italian restaurant. Oh, wait...minute, I have...name written down on...piece of paper in my wallet. (Checks wallet.) It's called DeVino's. B: Oh, I think you're headed in...wrong direction. DeVino's is near...Time Square. If you are in...rush, you should take...taxi.

Exercise 9. Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is needed, leave the space empty (-)

1. I'm not going out yet. I'm waiting ...the rain to stop. 2. You're always asking me ... money. Ask somebody else for a change. 3. I've applied ... a job at the factory. I don't know if I'll get it. 4. If I want a job at the factory, who do I apply ... ? 5. I've searched everywhere ... John but I haven't been able to find him. 6. I don't want to talk ... what happened last night. Let's forget it. 7. I don't want to discuss ... what happened last night. Let's forget it. 8. We had an interesting discussion ... the problem but we didn't reach a decision. 9. We discussed ... the problem but we didn't reach a decision. 10. I don't want to go out yet. I'm

waiting ... the post to arrive. 11. Keith and Sonia are touring Europe. They're in Rome at the moment, but tomorrow they leave ... Venice. 12. The roof of the house is in very bad condition. I think we ought to do something ... it. 13. We waited ... Jim for half an hour but he never came. 14. Tomorrow morning I have to catch a plane. I'm leaving my house ... the airport at 7.30.

Exercise 10. Use correct Tenses

1. I (always have) trouble with my engine these days. 2. If I were a ghost I (try) to frighten all the people I dislike. 3. He (know) her for a long time before he finally got married to her. 4. I hope it (not rain) when we leave church. 5. Since you gave me your number I (phone) you four times and (*not find*) you at home. 6. (you, ever meet) our president? 7. It (take) a long time for man to learn to make tools and weapons. 8. John came in with a very dirty face and I wondered what he (do). 9. They (live) in Liverpool for ten years when I first met them.

Homework 1. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense of the infinitive form

A: I'm not going to Elizabeth's party! B: She'll be very disappointed. You know she expects to (see) you there. 2 A: The boys' clothes are all dirty. B: They must (play) in the garden. 3 A: Frank appears (study) hard all day. B: Yes, he hasn't even stopped for lunch. 4 A: I like the DJ. This music is so good! B: Yes, everybody seems (have) a good time. 5 A: When do you want the report? B: It needs (finish) by tonight. 6 A: When was the car stolen? B: It appears (take) during the night. 7 A: Why is Gregory's face so red? B: He seems (run). 8 A: Did you read the front page of today's paper? B: Yes, isn't it amazing! Scientists claim. upset with John and Anthony (find) a cure for cancer.

Use correct -ing forms.

1. Excuse me for (to break) your beautiful vase. 2. You never mentioned (to be) to Greece. 3. She was proud of (to award) the cup of a champion. 4. I don't remember ever (to meet) your sister. 5. I don't remember (to ask) this question by anybody. 6. The cat was punished for (to break) the cup. 7. The cat was afraid of (to punish) and hid itself under the sofa. 8. The machine needs (to clean). 9. I am quite serious in (to say) that I don't want to go abroad. 10. He seemed sorry for (to be) inattentive to his child. 11. She confessed to (to forget) to send the letter. 12. The old man could not stand (to tell) what he should do. 13. Going to the party was no use: he had no talent for (to dance). 14. The Bronze Horseman is worth (to see). 15. After thoroughly (to examine) the student, the professor gave him a satisfactory mark. 16. After thoroughly (to examine) by the examination commission, the student was given a satisfactory mark. 17. She accused him of (to steal) her purse. 18. She reproached me for (not to write) to her. 19. This job is not worth (to take). 20. After (to look) through and (to mark) the students' papers, the teacher handed them back. 21. After (to look) through and (to mark), the papers were handed back to the

students. 22. These clothes want (to wash). 23. David was very glad of (to find) his aunt.

Homework 2. Use correct Modals *should or must*.

1. You ... have studied the material thoroughly. I see you have made no mistakes in the test-paper. 2. You ... have studied the material thoroughly. Then you would not have made so many mistakes. 3. She ... have followed the doctor's advice. She would have recovered by now. 4. She ... have followed the doctor's advice. She looks very fine. 5. You ... have ignored the instructions of your sports coach. That's why you lost the game. 6. You ... have followed the instructions of your sports coach. Then you would have won the game. 7. She ... have forgotten to take her medicine. 8. She ... have remembered to take her medicine. 9. I ... have got on the wrong bus. I cannot recognize the places we are passing. 10. I ... have looked carefully at the number of the bus. Now I must change buses, and I am afraid I shall be late.

Needn't have done, didn't need

1. I....(go) to work today but I went as I knew they were really busy on this new contract. 2. I....(take) any money to the museum - I didn't realise it was free to enter. 3. Sheila....(got) a taxi to the party. I would have given her a lift in my car. 4. Oh Mike, you...(buy) me anything for my birthday! A simple card would have been perfectly acceptable. 5. Today was the last day of school and we...(attend) classes in the afternoon. 6. We went for a lovely walk in the woods yesterday. We took a huge picnic with us but there was a café there anyway. We...(take) anything! 7. Our boss told us we had an extra three days to finish the project so we...(work) so hard. 8. You...(say) anything to Carla about the broken vase. She understood what had happened anyway.

Additional exercise 1. Use correct form of the Infinitive

1. He seems (to read) a lot. 2. He seems (to read) now. 3. He seems (to read) since morning. 4. He seems (to read) all the books in the library. 5. I want (to take) you to the concert. 6. I want (to take) to the concert by my father. 7. She hoped (to help) her friends. 6. She hoped (to help) by her friends. 9. I hope (to see) you soon. 10. We expect (to be) back in two days. 11. He expected (to help) by the teacher. 12. The children seem (to play) since morning. 13. I am glad (to do) all the homework yesterday. 14. She seems (to work) at this problem ever since she came here. 15. I am sorry (to break) your pen.

Additional exercise 2. Use correct -ING form

1. Little David couldn't bear (to recite) his lessons in the presence of his stepfather and Miss Murdstone. They frightened him so that he couldn't help (to make) mistakes though he tried hard to avoid (to displease) them and (to scold). 2. The girls were busy (to pack) when one of them suddenly remembered (to leave) the milk on the stove which was probably boiling over. 3. The girl was

proud of (to choose) to represent the sportsmen of the school at the coming competition. She thanked her classmates for (to choose) her and promised to do her best to win. 4. I landed in London on an autumn evening. My friends expected me home for the holidays but had no idea of my (to return) so soon. I had purposely not informed them of my (to come), that I might have the pleasure of (to take) them by surprise. And yet I had a feeling of disappointment in (to receive) no welcome. I even felt like (to cry).

Revision test

1. We are about ... at the place where we can set up our tents.
a) to arrive b) arriving c) to have arriving.
2. It will be wise for him ... himself what the background is to the event.
a) asking b) to ask c) to asking.
3. To be or not ..., that's the question.
a) being b) to being. c) to be.
4. He was unfortunate ... off on a journey on board a ship which later sank to the bottom of the ocean.
a) to set b) setting c) to have set.
5. After thinking about it, I decided ... some more money with me before ... abroad.
a) to take / going b) to take / to go c) taking / to go.
6. Is it possible ... you a personal question?
a) asking b) be asking c) to ask.
7. My mother wanted me ... the car but I had promised to the cinema with my friends so I told her I'd do it later.
a) to wash / to go b) washing / going c) to wash / going.

THEME 1.10. INFINITIVE VERB PATTERNS

Theoretical background. Підручник Л.Г.Вербі, сс. 85-90

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=xd3YUo0rgZg&t=13s&ab_channel=EnglishwithEmma%C2%B7engVid

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=5-lvJLTBKDg&ab_channel=LearningWithFun-byReetUdhan

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=8ZTikQEt0Z8&ab_channel=EnglishwithAlex%C2%B7engVidEnglishClasses

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=YRRIBV0eVtY&ab_channel=EducationDevider

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=xfx2p4BC2Vg&ab_channel=ESLVideos

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=xfx2p4BC2Vg&ab_channel=ESLVideos

Exercise 1. Translate into Ukrainian

1. He must have sold his piano. 2. He may have sold his piano. 3. He might have sold his piano. 4. He can't have sold his piano. 5. He should have sold his piano. 6. He shouldn't have sold his piano. 7. He needn't have sold his piano. 8. He didn't have to sell his piano. 9. He had to sell his piano. 10. He was to sell his piano.

Exercise 2. Complete each sentence with a suitable verb

1. Don't forget ... the letter I gave you. 2. There was a lot of traffic but we managed ... to the airport in time. 3. Jill has decided not ... a car. 4. We've got a new computer. I haven't learnt ... it yet. 5. I wonder where Sue is. She promised not ... late. 6. We were all too afraid to speak. Nobody dared ... anything.

Exercise 3. Make a new sentence using the verb in brackets

1. He has lost weight. (seem) 2. Tom is worried about something. (appear). 3. You know a lot of people. (seem). 4. My English is getting better. (seem) 5. That car has broken down. (appear) 6. David forgets things. (tend) 7. They have solved the problem. (claim)

Exercise 4. Complete each sentence using *what/how/whether* + one of these verbs: *do go ride say use, get*

1. Do you know how ... John's house? 2. Can you show me ... this washing machine? 3. Would you know ... if there was a fire in the building? 4. You'll never forget ... a bicycle once you have learned. 5. I was really astonished. I didn't know 6. I've been invited to the party but I don't know ... or not.

Exercise 5. Use a sentence from Box A and a sentence from Box B to make a new sentence

A	B
1. I shouted	I want to keep warm
2. I had to go to the bank	I wanted to report that my car had been stolen
3. I'm saving money	I want to go to Canada
4. I went into hospital	I had to have an operation
5. I'm wearing two pullovers	I needed to get some money
6. I phoned the police station	I wanted to warn people of danger

Exercise 6. Complete these sentences using a suitable verb

- The President has a team of bodyguards to ... him.
- I didn't have enough time ... the newspaper today.
- I came home by taxi. I didn't have the energy ...
- 'Would you like something ...?' 'Yes, please. A cup of coffee.'
- We need a bag ... these things in.
- There will be a meeting next week ... the problem.
- I wish we had enough money ... a new car.
- I saw Helen at the party but we didn't have a chance to each other.
- I need some new clothes. I haven't got anything nice ...
- They've just passed their exams. They're having a party ...
- I can't do all this work alone. I need somebody ... me.

Exercise 7. Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown

- It's difficult to understand him. He is difficult to understand. I couldn't answer the question. (difficult) It was a difficult question to answer.*
- It's quite easy to use this machine. This machine is ...
- It was very difficult to open the window. The window ...
- It's impossible to translate some words. Some words ...
- It's not safe to stand on that chair. That chair ...
- It's expensive to maintain a car.
- Everybody makes that mistake. (easy). It's an ...
- I like living in this place. (nice). It's a ...
- We enjoyed watching the game. (good). It was ...

Exercise 8. Complete the second sentence using the words in brackets + to ...

- Nobody left before me (the first).
- Everybody else arrived before Paul (the last).
- Fiona passed the exam. All the other students failed (the only).
- I complained to the restaurant manager about the service. Another customer had already complained before me (the second).
- Neil Armstrong walked on the moon in 1969. Nobody had done this before him (the first).

Exercise 9. Change the structure

E.g. He is so old that he cannot skate. He is too old to skate.

- The problem is so difficult that it is impossible to solve it.
- The box is so heavy that nobody can carry it.
- The baby is so little that it cannot walk.
- He is so weak that he cannot lift this weight.
- She is so busy that she cannot talk with you.
- She was so inattentive that she did not notice the mistake.
- The

rule was so difficult that they did not understand it. 8. He was so stupid that he did not see the joke. 9. She has got so fat that she cannot wear this dress now. 10. The accident was so terrible that I don't want to talk about it. 11. They were so empty-headed that they could not learn a single thing. 12. The window was so dirty that they could not see through it. 13. She was so foolish that she could not understand my explanation. 14. I have very little wool: it won't make a sweater.

Exercise 10. Use or not particle TO

1. My brother can ... speak French. 2. Would you like ... go to England? 3. Let me ... help you with your homework. 4. I was planning ... do a lot of things yesterday. 5. I'd like ... speak to you. 6. I think I shall be able ... solve this problem. 7. What makes you ... think you are right? 8. I'll do all I can ... help you. 9. I like ... dance. 10. I'd like ... dance. 11. She made me ... repeat my words several times. 12. I saw him ... enter the room. 13. She did not let her mother ... go away. 14. Do you like ... listen to good music? 15. Would you like ... listen to good music? 16. That funny scene made me ... laugh.

Exercise 11. Use correct Article

Dear Judy! Sorry that I didn't email you earlier to tell you about...trip, but I've had...bunch of things to do since we got back. We had...fantastic time in...Africa. Although this is...first time I've ever traveled to...foreign country, I feel confident saying that it's one of...most beautiful places on...planet. We began...trip in...Cape Town as you suggested. It's such..beautiful city. And I'm so glad you recommended that we take...cable car up...Table Mountain. While we were taking in..spectacular views, we met...man who runs...lodge just outside...Kalahari National Park. He invited us to stay in...lodge for free, so we rented...car and slowly drove up...West Coast to...park and spent our time exploring...Kalahari Desert. What...adventure! Take care, Diane

Exercise 12. Put in the correct preposition

1. Did you hear ... what happened at the party on Saturday? 2. 'I had a strange dream last night.' 'Did you? What did you dream ... ? 3. Our neighbours complained ... us ... the noise we made last night. 4. Ken was complaining ... pains in his chest, so he went to the doctor. 5. I love this music. It reminds me ... a warm day in spring. 6. He loves his job. He thinks ... his job all the time, he dreams ... it, he talks ... it and I'm fed up with hearing ... it. 7. I tried to remember the name of the book but I couldn't think ... it. 8. Janet warned me ... the water. She said it wasn't safe to drink.

Exercise 13. Use correct Tenses

1.I...here for three hours now but I...a single fish yet (sit, not catch). 2.The ancient Romans...fine monuments and old roads some of whichstill today

(build, exist). 3. I...you yesterday. You....outside a cafe (see, sit). 4. She...the sea in her whole life. She...to go there last year but she...any money (never see, want, not have). 5. I...black stockings since I was at school (not wear). 6. I...about their affair for years (know). 7. I...English for the past two years and now I...French too. (learn, study). 8. Mum...in the garden the whole day (work). 9. We...lovely weather for the last two weeks. I hope it---that way (have, stay). 10. Most shops...at 6 p.m. on Saturdays (close). 11. Where...your holidays this summer (you, spend). 12. I will have this novel finished by December. By then I...on it for over a year (work). 13. Now that you...work you can go home (finish). 14. When a passenger plane---off course a few months ago it---into the mountains and everyone ...in it (fly, crash, kill). 15. The scientist suddenly saw the answer to the problem that he...with for the last two months. (deal). 16. If you hadn't been so lazy, you...the work by now (finish). 17. Where on earth have you been ? – I...for ages (wait). 18. The weather is really awful here...like that ? (it, always, rain). 19. Things...since I was a girl (change). 20. He ... his leg ... in a skiing accident last year (break)

Exercise 14. Use correct Modals

could have / would have / should have + past participle)

1. I (buy) bread but I didn't know we needed it. (past possibility) 2. We (invite) so many people to our party! I'm worried that we won't have enough room for everyone. (past negative advice / regret). 3. I(start) saving money years ago! (past advice / regret) 4. We (join) you at the restaurant, but we couldn't get a babysitter. (past willingness) 5. The weather (be) any worse! (past negative possibility) 6. I (arrive) on time, even if I'd left earlier. There were dreadful traffic jams all the way. (past negative possibility) 7. They (win) the football match, but John hurt his ankle. (past possibility) 8. Amanda (finish) the work, but she felt ill and had to go home. (past willingness) 9. Lucy (leave) earlier. She missed her flight. (past advice / regret) 10. We (finish) the game, even if we'd wanted to. It was raining very hard and we had to stop. (past negative possibility) 11. I(eat) so much chocolate! I feel sick! (past negative advice / regret) 12. Luke (pass) the exam if he'd studied a bit more. (past possibility) 13. John(call) Amy, but he didn't have her number. (past willingness) 14. You (be) rude to him. He's going to be really angry now. (past negative advice / regret) 15. She (come) to the restaurant if she'd left work earlier. (past possibility) 16. You (take) this job. I can see you're not enjoying it. (past negative advice / regret) 17. The race was really difficult. She (win) because she's not fit enough. (past negative possibility) 18. Our neighbours (cut) down the tree in their garden. It was a really beautiful tree. (past negative advice / regret) 19. The children (do) their homework last night. Then they wouldn't be panicking on the way to school. (past advice / regret) 20. I'm really cold! I (bring) my coat. (past advice / regret)

Homework 1. Complete the following sentences in English using the words provided above the sentences. Pay close attention to the correct grammar forms of the verbs used in the answers. Some of them should be used with **to-infinitive** form and the others simply **infinitive without to**.

cry sleep arrive clean do explain get go hear know wait walk

1. Do you want to go by car?' 'No, let's...' 2. Don't wake me up tomorrow morning. Let me ... 3. It was a very sad film. It made me... 4. Kevin's parents didn't want him ...married. 5. Please don't tell Sarah about my plan. I don't want her... 6. Please stay with me. I don't want you... 7. 'Shall we begin?' 'No, let's...a few minutes.' 8. She didn't understand the story, so she asked me...it to her. 9. Talk quietly. I don't want anybody...us. 10. The kitchen is very dirty. Can you help me..it? 11. What do you think about my problem? What do you advise me... 12. You're here early. I expected you...later.

Can you remember the sentences from the last activity? Write the correct words. There are three or four words missing from each sentence.

1.It was a lovely day so we ...swimming. 2. We're...some theatre tickets if they're not too expensive. 3. Don't...some bread on the way home. 4. Max was very busy but he...his friends. 5. Karen...her daughter a souvenir from Rome. 6. The boss...you in his office. He's waiting for you now. 7. I'm really tired. I...home now. 8. The teacher...the children...their books and listen carefully. 9. The film starts at six, so I...everyoneat the cinema at five thirty. 10. We...our guests at about ten o'clock – if the traffic is good. 11. My mother always...me to strange men. 12. We...our landlady the rent this year.

Homework 2. Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box answer tell pay win leave do announce climb be discover

I always do my best ... well at school. We were proud ... the birth of our baby. Sarah is about... . Can you see her off? The young man turned out ... my classmate. We can't afford ... for luxuries these days. Columbus set out ... America in 1492. I made an effort ... the race, but I didn't succeed. The children were afraid ... the truth. The manager took the trouble ... personally. Once he made up his mind ... the mountain, there was no stopping him.

Additional exercise 1. Rewrite the following sentences

Example: I'm sure that he is coming tomorrow. - He must be coming tomorrow. It appears that Sam is living in Madrid. - Sam appears to be living in Madrid.

1. Maybe they are watching a video. They might ... a video.
2. It seems that he is working for the IBM. He seems ... for the IBM.
3. She promised she would be waiting at the arrivals hall. She promised ... at the arrivals hall.
4. She pretended that she was crying. She

5. It happened that he was sitting near me when I collapsed. He ... near me when I collapsed.
6. It's a pity that you aren't listening to me. You should ... to me.
7. It appears that they are enjoying the party. They ... the party.
8. I hoped I would be living in Rome in a year's time. I hoped ... in Rome in a year's time.
9. Everybody believes that Marion is studying mathematics. Marion is believed ... mathematics.
10. People think that our son is playing for FC Barcelona. Our son is ... for FC Barcelona

Additional exercise 2. Choose the correct forms to complete the sentences

1. It is possible that he left. He might ... left have left
2. I was listening to Sue and Jill. You shouldn't ... to them.
be listening to them / have been listening
3. I'm sure they sent the parcel. They must ... the parcel.
have sent / have been sent
4. It is impossible that she was having a bath. She couldn't ... a bath.
have been having / be having
5. He seems to have been ill. It seems that he ... ill.
is / was
6. I happened to have bought such a bike before. It happened that I ... such a car before.
bought / had bought
7. She pretended to have been smiling at him. She pretended that she ... at him.
was smiling / had been smiling
8. John appears to have been suffering for a long time. It appears that John ... for a long time.
had been suffering / has been suffering
9. He is known to have abandoned his family. Everybody knows that he ... his family.
had abandoned / abandoned
10. They are believed to have been telling the truth. People believe that they ... the truth.
were telling / are telling

Revision test

1.Q. What is an infinitive?

- a) An infinitive is a word that shows the relationship of a noun or pronoun, called the object of infinitive, to another noun or pronoun.
- b) A group of words that begins with a preposition and ends with a noun or a pronoun called the object.

c) An infinitive is a verb form that can be used as a noun. It may also function as an adjective or an adverb.

2. Q. The infinitive is formed with the word ... and the base form of a ...

- a) to, noun
- b) to, verb
- c) to, adjective

3. Q. Infinitives are often used as a ... in sentences.

- a) love
- b) noun
- c) apostrophe

4. Q. If the word to comes immediately before a ..., it is part of an infinitive.

- a) hyperbole
- b) verb
- c) adjective

5. Q. Because infinitives are used as nouns, they can be what? (Choose all that apply).

- a) Subjects
- b) Predicate Nouns
- c) Direct Objects.

6. Q. What is an infinitive phrase?

- a) An infinitive phrase is a group of words that includes an infinitive and other words that complete its meaning.
- b) An infinitive phrase is another verb that may function as a noun. It may also function as an adjective or an adverb.
- c) An infinitive phrase is a prepositional phrase.

7. Q. What is the infinitive phrase?

- a) To win the last three games of the season will not be easy.
- b) To win the last three games of the season
- c) To win

8. Q. What is the infinitive phrase?

- a) To grow a mustache in time for the play became my dad's plan.
- b) To grow a mustache in time for the play
- c) To grow a mustache in time

10. Q. What is the infinitive phrase?

- a) I know how to fix the glitch in your computer program.
- b) how to fix the glitch in your computer program
- c) to fix the glitch in your computer program

THEME 1.11. COMPLEX OBJECT. COMPLEX SUBJECT

Theoretical background. English Grammar, cc.97-107

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=xfx2p4BC2Vg&t=10s&ab_channel=ESLVideos

Exercise 1. To or without TO?

1. I like ... play the guitar. 2. We had ... put on our overcoats because it was cold. 3. It is high time for you ... go to bed. 4. May I ... use your telephone? 5. They heard the girl ... cry out with joy. 6. I would rather ... stay at home today. 7. He did not want ... play in the yard any more. 8. You look tired. You had better ... go home. 9. I wanted ... speak to Nick, but could not... find his telephone number. 10. It is time ... get up.

Exercise 2. Fill in the gaps with: needn't have, didn't need to and the correct form of the verb in brackets

1. I ran through the airport, but (hurry) because the flight had been cancelled. 2. I (ask) for directions since I'd been to Karl 's house before. 3. We (give) her a present after all; it wasn't even her birthday! 4. I (buy) any milk since I later discovered that Brian had picked up some that morning. 5. Since all cinema employees get free entry, Frank (pay) for his ticket. 6. He (get up) early on Saturdays. He never worked at weekends.

Exercise 3. Rephrase the following sentences

1. He had never eaten octopus before. *first* It ... heoctopus.
2. Would you mind lending me your pen? *kind* Would you be.. me your pen?
3. It was the fastest car he had ever driven. *never* He had ... fast car.
4. Fred finds it difficult to understand some British accents. *difficulty* Fred... some British accents.
5. You mustn't bring food into the library. *allowed* You...

[https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UdYnQDW9-](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UdYnQDW9-IY&t=1s&ab_channel=NewModelforLearningEnglish)

[IY&t=1s&ab_channel=NewModelforLearningEnglish](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UdYnQDW9-IY&t=1s&ab_channel=NewModelforLearningEnglish)

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KsCoT79S02o&ab_channel=EnglishGrammarExplained

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HUoRqktxXnQ&ab_channel=NewModelforLearningEnglish

Exercise 1. Use the Complex Object

1. When I got to the cinema, I saw ... for me (he, to wait)
2. I knew the guests had arrived because I could hear ... downstairs (they, to laugh)

3. Do you want ... with you? (I, to come)
4. Hot weather makes ... tired (I, to feel)
5. Do you want ... some money to you? (I, to give)
6. Glasses make ... older (he, to look)
7. The film was very sad. It made ... (I, to cry)
8. When I was a child, my mother made ... to bed early (I, to go)
9. I was surprised to hear ... a new job (she, to get)
10. I was sorry to hear ... his post (he, to lose)
11. Our teacher made us ... (do) this exercise all over again.
12. The teacher advised us .. (rewrite) the test.
13. Please, let me ... (know) when your sister returns from Paris.
14. I find your story ... (be) very unusual and interesting.
15. Nick doesn't want me ... (tell) everybody this news.
16. I watched the cat ... (crawl) to the flock of sparrows.
17. I would like you ... (be) very accurate and attentive.

Exercise 2. Use the Complex Subject

1. He ... a good musician (to consider, to be)
2. James .. a report next Wednesday (to expect, to make)
3. Mozart ... a lot of wonderful pieces of music (to know, to compose)
4. She ... in the laboratory from 2 to 6 p.m. tomorrow (to suppose, to work)
5. He ... the business himself (to expect, to manage)
6. The delegation ... Prague tonight at 11 a.m. (to report, to leave)
7. He ... at an urgent problem now (to see, to work)
8. The prices at the hotel ... reasonable (to turn out, to be)
9. He know Mr. Brown. – He (turned out)....

Exercise 3. Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown

1. *It is expected that the strike will end soon. The strike is expected to end soon.*
2. It is expected that the weather will be good tomorrow. The weather is ...
3. It is believed that the thieves got in through the kitchen window. The thieves
4. It is reported that many people are homeless after the floods. Many people ...
5. It is thought that the prisoner escaped by climbing over a wall. The prisoner ...
6. It is alleged that the man drove through the town at 90 miles an hour. The man is ...
7. It is reported that the building has been damaged by fire. The building...
8. It is said that the company is losing a lot of money. The company...
9. It is believed that the company lost a lot of money last year. The company ...
10. It is expected that the company will lose money this year. The company ..

Exercise 4. People say a lot of things about Arthur. For example:

- 1 Arthur eats spiders.

- 2 He is very rich.
3. He writes poetry.
4. He has 12 children.
5. He robbed a bank a long time ago.

Nobody knows for sure whether these things are true or not. Write sentences about Arthur using (be) supposed to.

Now you have to use (be) supposed to with its other meaning. In each example what happens is different from what is supposed to happen. Use (be) supposed to + one of these verbs:

arrive be block come park phone start

Some of the sentences are negative.

1. You're not ... to park here. It's private parking only.
2. The train ...at 11.30, but it was an hour late.
3. What are the children doing at home? They ... at school at this time.
4. We ... work at 8.15, but we rarely do anything before 8.30.
5. This door is a fire exit. You ... it.
6. Oh dear! I ... Ann but I completely forgot.
7. They arrived very early...at 2 o'clock. They ... until 3.30.

Complete the questions, Use do you want me to ...? or would you like me to ...? with one of these verbs (+ any other necessary words): come lend repeat show shut wait

1. Do you want to go alone or do you want me to come with you?
2. Have you got enough money or do you want ---
3. Shall I leave the window open or would you ---?
4. Do you know how to use the machine or would ---?
5. Did you hear what I said or do ---?
6. Can I go now or do ---?

Exercise 5. Complete these sentences so that the meaning is similar to the first sentence

1. My father said I could use his car. - My father allowed me to use his car.
2. I was surprised that it rained. - I didn't expect ...
3. Don't stop him doing what he wants. - Let ...
4. He looks older when he wears glasses. - Glasses make ...
5. I think you should know the truth. - I want ...
6. Don't let me forget to phone my sister. - Remind ...
7. At first I didn't want to apply for the job but Sarah persuaded me. - Sarah persuaded ...
8. My lawyer said I shouldn't say anything to the police. - My lawyer advised ...
9. I was told that I shouldn't believe everything he says. - I was warned ...
10. If you've got a car, you are able to travel round more easily. - Having a car

enables ...

Exercise 6. Complete the answers to the questions

1. Did anybody go out? I don't know. I didn't see anybody go out.
2. Has Jill arrived yet? Yes, I think I heard her ...
3. How do you know I took the money? - I know because I saw you ...
4. Did the doorbell ring? - I'm not sure. I didn't hear ...
5. Can Tom play the piano? - I've never heard ...
6. Did I lock the door when I went out? - Yes, you did. I saw ...
7. How did the woman fall in the river? -- I don't know. I didn't see ...

Exercise 7. Complete these sentences. Use one of these verbs (in the correct form):

climb come crawl cry cycle explode happen open run say slam sleep tell

1. Listen to the birds....
2. I didn't hear you ..in.
3. Did anybody see the accident ...?
4. We listened to the old man ... his story from beginning to end.
5. Listen! Can you hear a baby ...
6. I looked out of the window and saw Tim on his bike ... along the road.
7. 'Why did you turn round suddenly?' 'I thought I heard somebody ... my name.'
8. We watched the two men ... across the garden ... a window and ... through it into the house.
9. Everybody heard the bomb ... It was a tremendous noise.
10. Oh! I can feel something ... up my leg! It must be an insect.
11. I heard somebody ... the door in the middle of the night. It woke me up.
12. When we got home, we found a cat ... on the kitchen table.

Exercise 8. Use correct Articles

Welcome to...Tuvana Island, your vacation paradise in...South Pacific. Each luxury bungalow comes fully equipped with...king-size bed, ... outdoor shower, and...private veranda overlooking...Kituna Bay. Tuvana Resort offers...number of excursions to make your stay on...island more enjoyable. Each day, ... list of daily outings will be posted on...information board next to...reception desk. If you wish to join...outing, please register with...concierge. Please note...daily excursion to...Mt. Kapuhu is highly recommended; ..view from the top of...volcano is breathtaking. We also suggest...visit to...Nualani Beach or...Kihaha Canyon, two of...most popular attractions in...Sahini Archipelago. And for...scuba divers, we would like to direct your attention to...resort's dive center, ...five-star facility and...best way to explore...Pihuahani Reef just offshore.

Exercise 9. Put in to or at where necessary

1. They only invited a few people ... their wedding.
2. Look ... these flowers. Aren't they pretty?
3. Please don't shout ... me! Be nice to me!
4. I saw Sue as I was cycling along the road. I shouted ... her but she didn't hear me.
5. Don't listen ... what he says. He doesn't know what he's talking about.
6. Can I speak ... you for a moment? There's something I want to ask you.
7. Do you think I could have a look ... your newspaper, please?
8. I'm a bit lonely. I need somebody to talk ...
9. She was so angry she threw a chair ... me.
10. The woman sitting opposite me on the train kept staring ... me.

Exercise 10. Use correct Tenses

1. This is my house. How long (you, live) here ? I (live) here since 1950.
2. Shakespeare (write) a lot of plays.
3. My brother (write) several plays. He (just finish) his second tragedy.
4. I (not see) him for three years. I wonder where he is.
5. He (not smoke) for two weeks. He (try) to give it up.
6. Chopin (compose) some of his music in Majorca.
7. I (read) his books when I was at school.
8. I (enjoy) them very much.
9. I can't go out because I (not finish) my work yet.
10. The clock is slow. It isn't slow, it (stop).
11. Here are your shoes. I (just clean) them.
12. I (do) this sort of work when I (be) in the army.
13. He (go) out ten minutes ago.
14. (you have) breakfast yet ? Yes, I (have) it at 8 o'clock.
15. The play (just begin) . You're a bit late.
16. The actors (arrive) yesterday and (start) rehearsals early this morning.
17. It (be) very cold this year. I wonder when it will get warmer.
18. He (break) his leg in a skiing accident last year.
19. Mr. Pound is a bank manager. He (be) here for 25 years.
20. (you be) here before ? Yes, I (spend) my holidays here last year.
21. (you have) a good time ? No it never (stop) raining.
22. (you ever try) to give up smoking ? Yes, I (try) last year, but I (find) that I was getting so fat so I (start) again.

Homework 1. I expect that she will send me a letter. I expect her to send me a letter

1. I know that he is a great scientist.
2. I did not expect that my brother would forget to send her flowers.
3. He knows that my mother is a very kind woman.
4. She expected that her brother would bring her the book.
5. I know that your

uncle is an excellent mathematician. 6. People expect that the 21st century will bring peace on the earth. 7. I know that my friend is a just man. 8. I expect that he will understand your problem and help you to solve it. 9. I expected that she would behave quite differently.

He was reading in the garden. She saw him. She saw him reading...

1. The girl was singing. I heard her. 2. They were talking about computers. He heard them. 3. You and your friend were walking along the street yesterday. I saw you. 4. The little girls were playing on the grass. We watched them. 5. The ship was leaving the port. He stood and looked at it. 6. She was sleeping peacefully in her bed. Mother watched her. 7. The cat was rubbing itself on my leg. I felt it. 8. They were fishing. We saw it. 9. The pupils were writing a test-paper. The teacher watched them. 10. A caterpillar was crawling on my arm. I felt it. 11. I watched the sun. It was rising. 12. I heard him. He was singing an English song. 13. We noticed a man. The man was cleaning his shoes. 14. He saw two girls. They were dancing on the stage. 15. She watched the children. They were running and playing in the garden. 16. I saw her. She was arranging her hair. 17. We saw our neighbour. He was listening to the latest news on the radio. 18. John heard his sister. She was talking loudly on the veranda. 19. We saw Ben. He was crossing the square. 20. They heard their father. He was playing the piano in the drawing-room.

Homework 2. E.g. He dropped his bag. I saw it. I saw him drop his bag.

1. He slipped and fell. I saw it. 2. I heard that she suddenly cried out loudly. 3. She bent and picked up something from the floor. The policeman saw it. 4. I saw that he opened the door and left the room. 5. She dropped the cup on the floor and broke it. I saw it. 6. They turned the corner and disappeared. We watched them. 7. The doctor touched the boy's leg. The boy felt it. 8. Peter bought some flowers. His friends saw it. 9. The wounded hunter felt that the bear touched him, but he did not move. 10. Shall we hear it if the telephone rings? 11. Tamara saw that the waves carried the boat away. 12. The ship sailed away from the shore. They saw it. 13. Have you heard how he sings this opera part? 14. The boy noticed a bird. It flew on to the bush near the window. 15. Jane saw her neighbour. He opened the door of his flat and went in. 16. I saw him. He pointed to a picture on the wall. 17. I heard him. He shut the door of the study. 18. We saw that the children climbed to the tops of the trees. 19. I noticed that Henry went up and spoke to the stranger. 20. I felt that somebody touched me lightly on the shoulder. 21. He heard that someone called his name. 22. We did not expect that he would return so soon. 23. I saw that the telegraph boy handed the cable to the man.

Additional exercise 1. Use Complex Subject

1. We know Bernard Shaw to have been a very witty man. 2. People consider the climate there to be very healthful. 3. It was announced that the Chinese

dancers were arriving next week. 4. It is expected that the performance will be a success. 5. It is said that the book is popular with both old and young. 6. It is believed that the poem was written by an unknown soldier. 7. It is supposed that the playwright is working at a new comedy. 8. It is reported that the flood has caused much damage to the crops. 9. It was supposed that the crops would be rich that year. 10. It has been found that this mineral water is very good for the liver. 11. Scientists consider that electricity exists throughout space. 12. It is said that the weather in Europe was exceedingly hot last summer. 13. It is said that this man was very handsome in his youth. 14. It was reported that five ships were missing after the battle.

Additional exercise 2. E.g. It appeared that they had lost the way. They appeared to have lost the way

1. It seems they know all about it. 2. It seems they have heard all about it. 3. It seemed that the discussion was coming to an end. 4. It seems that you don't approve of the idea. 5. It seemed that the house had not been lived in for a long time. 6. It appeared that he was losing patience. 7. It appeared that he had not heard what had been said. 8. It happened that I was present at the opening session. 9. It so happened that I overheard their conversation. 10. It turned out that my prediction was correct. 11. It turned out that the language of the article was quite easy.

Revision test. Underline the correct item.

1. *Would/Can* I help you with your luggage?
2. I *needn't/mustn't* have brought my umbrella. It didn't rain at all.
3. Sarah *was able / ought to* have studied more for the test.
4. Fred *must/can* be very hungry; he hasn't eaten anything since breakfast.
5. You *don't have to/mustn't* park here. It's forbidden.
6. Dan *can't/shouldn't* print the document. He hasn't got a printer.

THEME 1.12. INFINITIVES VS ING-FORMS

Theoretical background. Grammar Way, pp. 30-37. English Grammar, cc.120-130 English Grammar, cc.115-119 English Grammar, cc.107-115

<https://www.youtube.com/shorts/Y-jXr69aGYI>

Exercise 1. Complete the gaps with the English grammar construction *want you to do* corresponding to the sentences in brackets above

1. (you must send me a text message) - I want...me a text message.
2. (please don't wait for me) - I don't want...for me
3. (you must come with me). - I want...with me
4. (shall I come with you?) - Do you want me...with you?
5. (listen carefully) - I want...carefully
6. (please don't be angry) - I don't want...with me
7. (shall I wait for you?) - Do you want me...for you?
8. (don't phone me tonight) - I don't want...me tonight
9. (you must meet Sarah) I want...Sarah
10. (shall I make some coffee?) - Do you want me...some coffee?

Exercise 2. Complete the following sentences with MAKE, LET, ALLOW in the correct grammar form ...me to help you with that suitcase, madam.

2. Do you think it is fair that you are ... to do military service, even if you think it is wrong?
3. He can't..you do anything you don't want to do.
4. If you do not behave yourselves, you will be...to stay behind after school.
5. They...us run five miles every morning. We had no choice.
6. This is an exam. No one is...to talk to anyone.
7. Unfortunately, they won't...you leave the country without a passport.
8. Until what time did your parents...you to say up when you were there?
9. We will not...you to go into pubs until you are eighteen.
10. Why do you never...me have any fun?

List of words used with the Gerund

Acknowledge, admit, anticipate, appreciate, avoid, be worth, bear, can't help, celebrate, complete, confess, consider, defend, delay, deny, detest, discontinue, discuss, dislike, dispute, dread, endure, enjoy, entail, escape, evade, explain, fancy, fear, feel like, finish, forgive, give up, hate, intend, involve, justify, keep, keep on, love, mention, mind (object to), miss, necessitate, omit, permit, picture, postpone, practice, prefer, quit, recall, recollect, recommend, resent, resist, risk, sanction, tolerate, prevent, put off, recall, recollect, recommend, report, resent, resist, resume, risk, suggest, support, tolerate, understand, urge, warrant.

Complain about, dream about/of, talk about/of think about/of, apologize for make an excuse for, have a reason for believe in, participate in succeed in, take advantage of take care of, insist on look forward to, blame (something/somebody) for forgive (something/somebody) for, thank (something/somebody) for keep (something/somebody) from, prevent (something/somebody) from stop (something/somebody) from; it's no use; it's no good.

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NXXKF6M8KuI&ab_channel=TeacherWhattIDo-TeacherDiana

Exercise 1. Complete each sentence using only one word

1. Our neighbours apologized for ...so much noise.
2. I feel lazy. I don't feel like ... any work.
3. I wanted to go out alone but Joe insisted on ... with me.
4. I'm fed up with my job. I'm thinking of ... something else.
5. We have decided against ... a new car because we can't really afford it.
6. I hope you write to me soon. I'm looking forward to ... from you.
7. The weather was extremely bad and this prevented us from ... out.
8. The man who has been arrested is suspected of ... a false passport.
9. I think you should apologize to Sue for ... so rude to her.
10. Some parents don't approve of their children ... a lot of television.
11. I'm sorry I can't come to your party but thank you very much for ... me.
12. It took us a long time but we finally succeeded ... the problem.
13. I've always dreamed ... in a small house by the sea.
14. The driver of the other car accused me ... the accident.
15. Forgive me ... you but may I ask you something?
16. Where are you thinking ... your holiday this year?
17. The guards weren't able to prevent the prisoner ...
18. I'm sorry we've had to cancel our game of tennis tomorrow. I was really looking forward ...
19. Jim congratulated me ...
20. It was nice of you to come to see me. Thank you. Mrs Bond thanked ...

Infinitive or Gerund

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1VaoDZpzWTw&ab_channel=EnglishwithLucy

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PT85QlyEjQI&ab_channel=EasyEnglish

Like, stop, used to, mean, try, go on, to be afraid, be sorry (to, for), hate, regret, forget, remember, allow, forbid, advise, encourage, permit, recommend need, require, want,

would prefer to (specific), would prefer doing (general)

Exercise 2. Put the verb into the correct form, ~ing or to... . Sometimes either form is possible

1. They denied... the money. (steal)
2. I don't enjoy ... very much. (drive)
3. I don't want ... out tonight. I'm too tired. (go)
4. I can't afford ... out tonight. I haven't got enough money. (go)
5. Has it stopped ... yet? (rain)
6. Can you remind me ... some coffee when we go out? (buy)
7. Why do you keep ... me questions? Can't you leave me alone? (ask)
8. Please stop ... me questions! (ask)
9. I refuse ... any more questions. (answer)
10. One of the boys admitted ... the window. (break)
11. The boy's father promised ... for the window to be repaired. (pay)
12. Ann was having dinner when the phone rang. She didn't answer the phone; she just carried on ... (eat)
13. 'How did the thief get into the house?' 'I forgot ... the window.' (shut)
14. I've enjoyed ... you. (meet) I hope ... you again soon. (see)
15. The baby began ... in the middle of the night. (cry)
16. Julia has been ill but now she's beginning ... better. (get)

Exercise 3. Make helpful suggestions. Each time write a sentence using TRY + one of the following suggestions: *phone him at work, move the aerial, change the batteries, turn it the other way, take an aspirin*

1. The radio isn't working. I wonder what's wrong with it.
2. I can't open the door. The key won't turn.
3. The TV picture isn't very good. What can I do about it?
4. I can't contact Fred. He's not at home. What shall I do?
5. I've got a terrible headache. I wish it would go.

Exercise 4. Make a sentence with need(s) + one of the following verbs: *clean cut empty redecorate tighten*

1. Her jacket is dirty. It needs...
2. The grass is very long. It ...
3. The room isn't very nice ...
4. The screws are loose ...
5. The bin is full ...

Exercise 5. Put the verb into the correct form, ~ing or to...

1. a. I was very tired. I tried (keep) my eyes open but I couldn't.
b. I rang the doorbell but there was no answer. Then I tried (knock) on the door, but there was still no answer.

- c. We tried (put) the fire out but we were unsuccessful. We had to call the fire brigade.
 - d. Sue needed to borrow some money. She tried (ask) Gerry but he was short of money too.
 - e. I tried (reach) the shelf but I wasn't tall enough.
 - f. Please leave me alone. I'm trying (concentrate).
2. a. I need a change. I need (go) away for a while.
 - b. She isn't able to look after herself. She needs (look) after.
 - c. The windows are dirty. They need (clean).
 - d. Why are you leaving now? You don't need (go) yet, do you?
 - e. You don't need (iron) that shirt. It doesn't need (iron).
3. a. They were talking very loudly. I couldn't help (overhear) them.
 - b. Can you help me (get) the dinner ready?
 - c. He looks so funny. Whenever I see him, I can't help (smile).
 - d. The fine weather helped (make) it a very enjoyable holiday.

Exercise 6. Complete the sentences with likes... or doesn't like... + one of the following (in the correct form): be, kept waiting, do nothing, drive, fly, solve mysteries, take photographs, take risks, work in the open air

1. George is a detective. He enjoys his work. He likes...
2. Ann very rarely travels by plane. She doesn't like...
3. Rose always carries her camera with her. She ...
4. Christine doesn't use her car very often. She ...
5. Dave is a gardener. He likes his job. He ...
6. Jennifer is a very cautious person. She ...
7. Ted is extremely lazy. He ...
8. Helen is very impatient. She ...

Exercise 7. Complete the sentences using only one word each time

1. Jane had to get used to ... on the left.
2. We used to ... in a small village but now we live in London.
3. Tom used to ... a lot of coffee. Now he prefers tea.
4. I feel very full after that meal. I'm not used to ... so much.
5. I wouldn't like to share an office. I'm used to ... my own office.
6. I used to ... a car but I sold it a few months ago.
7. When we were children, we used to ... swimming every day.
8. There used to ... a cinema here but it was knocked down a few years ago.
9. I'm the boss here! I'm not used to ... told what to do.

Exercise 8. Complete each sentence with one of the following verbs (in the correct form): answer apply be forget listen live lose make pay read try use

1. He tried to avoid ... my question.
2. Could you please stop ... so much noise?

3. I enjoy ... to music.
4. I considered ... for the job, but in the end I decided against it.
5. Have you finished ... the newspaper yet?
6. We need to change our routine. We can't go on ... like this.
7. I don't mind you ... my phone, but please ask me first.
8. My memory is getting worse. I keep ... things.
9. I've put off ... this bill so many times. I really must do it today.
10. What a stupid thing to do! Can you imagine anybody ... so stupid?
11. I've given up ... to lose weight- it's impossible.
12. If you gamble, you risk ... your money.

Exercise 9. Put in a suitable verb in the correct form, ~ing or to ... Sometimes either form is possible

1. It's nice to be with other people but sometimes I enjoy ... alone.
2. I'm not quite ready yet. Do you mind ... a little longer?
3. When I was a child, I hated ... to bed early.
4. I don't enjoy ... letters. I can never think what to write.
5. I need a new job. I can't stand ... here any more.
6. I would love ... to your wedding but I'm afraid it isn't possible.
7. Caroline never wears a hat. She doesn't like ... hats.
8. 'Would you like ... down?' 'No, thanks. I'll stand.'
9. When I have to catch a train, I'm always worried that I'll miss it. So I like ... to the station in plenty of time.
10. Have you got a moment? I'd like ... to you about something.
11. Students need (buy) a lot of books.
12. I like (give) parties to my friends.
13. It started (snow) in early morning.
14. We'd like (celebrate) our wedding anniversary at the restaurant this year.
15. The tourists finished (pack) at about ten.
16. Are you planning (go) on a holiday this year?
17. I've just begun (read) a novel by B. Bradford.
18. Please stop (crack) nuts!
19. We stopped (buy) a packet of nuts.
20. Did you remember (feed) the fish this morning?
21. I remember (see) this writer at some conference.
22. Don't worry! I promise (be) on time.
23. What time do you expect (arrive) in Newcastle?
24. I forgot (lock) the door of my apartment this morning.
25. He forgot (tell) these jokes many times before.
26. The streets are unsafe at night. (a lot of people/afraid/go/out)
27. We walked very carefully along the icy path. (we/afraid/fall)
28. I don't usually carry my passport with me. (I/afraid/lose/it)
29. The sea was very rough. (we/afraid/go/swimming)
30. We rushed to the station. (we/afraid/miss/our train)

Exercise 10. Use correct Articles

A: I'm...medical researcher. I work for...pharmaceutical company in ...Chicago. The company produces low-cost medications for...common colds, ...flu, ...hay fever and...asthma. What do you do for...living?

B: I'm...professor at...Boston College. I used to work at...University of Arizona, but I recently decided to relocate back to...East Coast. I grew up in...Massachusetts, and I missed...ocean.

A: I have...friend who is...professor there, Dr. Gina Townsend. Maybe you know her. She's in...anthropology department.

B: No, ...name doesn't ring any bells. But I'm...professor of sociology, and...anthropology department is in..same building. What does she look like?

A: She's...tall redhead with...incredibly hilarious sense of humor. She's...funniest woman you've ever met in your life. We both studied together at...Georgetown University.

B: Oh, of course! I met her at...university function...last year. She's ...amazing woman.

A: Wow, it's...small world, isn't it?

Exercise 11. Put in the correct preposition

1. The letter I wrote was full ... mistakes.
2. My home town is not especially interesting. It's not famous ... anything.
3. Kate is very fond ... her younger brother.
4. I don't like going up ladders. I'm afraid ... heights.
5. You look bored. You don't seem interested ... what I'm saying.
6. Did you know that Liz is engaged ... a friend of mine?
7. I'm not ashamed ... what I did. In fact I'm quite proud ... it.
8. I suggested we should all go out for a meal but nobody else was keen ... the idea.
9. These days everybody is aware ... the dangers of smoking.
10. The station platform was crowded ... people waiting for the train.
11. She's much more successful than I am. Sometimes I feel a bit jealous ... her.
12. I'm tired ... doing the same thing every day. I need a change.
13. Do you know anyone who might be interested ... buying an old car?
14. We've got plenty to eat. The fridge is full ... food.
15. She is a very honest person. I don't think she is capable ... telling a lie.
16. I'm not surprised she changed her mind at the last moment. That's typical ... her.
17. Our house is similar ... yours. Perhaps yours is a bit larger.
18. John has no money of his own. He's totally dependent ... his parents.

Exercise 12. Use correct Tenses

1. Our baby Mona...now. – She's a year old (*walk*)
2. We have to rest. We...for over four hours (*walk*)
3. It was a tough match. At half time three footballers...to the hospital (*take*)
4. My dog looked guilty. He...some food from the kitchen table. (*take*)
5. We need a new car. We...this one for ages. (*have*)
6. We...a lovely picnic until my wife was stung by a bee. (*have*)
7. Don't call at eight. We...dinner then (*have*)
8. Our sandwiches...freshly every day (*make*)
9. By the time I'm forty I...enough money to retire (*make*).

10. Where are my jeans? – They...at the moment (*wash*)
11. Simon was all wet because he...the car. (*wash*)
12. My sister earns a good salary. She...computer software. (*sell*)
13. Nobody wants to buy the house. It...in an auction next month. (*sell*)
14. At the end of this term I...for six years. (*teach*)
15. The children...how to make cake when a boy dropped the bowl on his foot. (*teach*)

Homework 1. Open the brackets

1. Dan enjoys (read) science fiction. 2. Cheryl suggested (see) a movie after work. 3. I miss (work) in the travel industry. Maybe I can get my old job back.
4. Where did you learn (speak) Spanish? Was it in Spain or in Latin America?
5. Do you mind (help) me translate this letter? 6. He asked (talk) to the store manager. 7. You've never mentioned (live) in Japan before. How long did you live there? 8. If he keeps (come) to work late, he's going to get fired! 9. Debbie plans (study) abroad next year. 10. I agreed (help) Jack wash his car. 11. I hope (graduate) from college next June. 12. The models practiced (walk) with a book balanced on their heads. 13. Mandy has promised (take) care of our dog while we are on vacation. 14. Mr. Edwards chose (accept) the management position in Chicago rather than the position in Miami. 15. I don't know what she wants (do) tonight. Why don't you ask her? 16. Frank offered (help) us paint the house. 17. Sandra decided (study) economics in London. 18. Witnesses reported (see) the bank robber as he was climbing out of the second-story window. 19. Stephanie dislikes (work) in front of a computer all day. 20. Mrs. Naidoo appears (be) the most qualified person for the job.

Homework 2. Fill in the correct form: Gerund or Infinitive

1. It's impossible on this pitch because the ball won't bounce. (play) 2. They accused his youngest son of ... the fence. (break) 3. I blamed him for ... me with my homework. That's why I got a bad mark. (not help) 4. I would like to know why he insisted on ... this alone (do). 5. I suggest ... for a walk this afternoon. How about it? (go) 6. The doctor advised him ... swimming because of his cold. (not go) 7. I managed to balance my account without ... out a new loan. (take) 8. I can't afford ... money on new clothes. (spend) 9. She can't tolerate ... the centre of attention. (not be) 10. I regret ... that the event must be cancelled due to the circumstances. (say) 11. Dad demanded ... what I was doing up at this time of the night. (know) 12. For some people it's difficult to get used ... up early in the morning. (wake) 13. Why did you avoid ... your father the truth? (tell) 14. Do you fancy ... out with me tonight? (go) 15. In the old days you were allowed ... almost everywhere. (smoke) 16. My teacher forbade us ... school during lessons. (leave) 17. I forgot .. at the store for some groceries. (stop) 18. This car needs ... Could you do for me? (wash) 19. We postponed ... to the cinema until next week. (go) 20. I didn't expect her ... the

award. (win) 21. He spends all his spare time ... stamps and coins. (collect) 22. When I was in London, I managed ... almost all the important sights, despite the little time I had. (see) 23. He denied ... contact with the suspect. (have) 24. I remember ... to my first concert when I was 18. (go) 25. We were anxious __abroad for the first time. (go)

Additional exercise 1. Put the verbs in brackets into the infinitive or -ing

Claire: Katie! I've been meaning (ask) you. Did you pass your driving test?
Katie: No, I'm afraid I didn't... **Claire:** Oh! I'm really sorry (hear) that. Did your examiner say why? **Katie:** Yes. He said I didn't remember (look) in my rearview mirror when I was reversing. Although I really don't remember (forget) to do that! **Claire:** Oh. That's a pity. **Katie:** He also said that I forgot (signal) that I was turning on two occasions. And that I didn't stop (look) when I went through an intersection. I have to admit to those mistakes though. **Claire:** Oh, dear. Are you very upset you failed? **Katie:** A bit. I'm trying (forget) about it. **Claire:** Look, you just need some more lessons. **Katie:** That's what my examiner said. He told me not to give up. **Claire:** Hey, I've got an idea! Why don't you try (take) lessons with my dad? He taught me to drive. He's a really good teacher. **Katie:** Thanks. But my brother says he wants (help) me. I'd prefer (get) lessons from him. **Claire:** OK. No problem. Just let me know if there's anything else I can do to help. **Katie:** Thanks! I will.

Additional exercise 2. Open the brackets

Dear John, I was glad to receive your email. I didn't go to the party on Saturday night because I injured myself at football practice last week. I'm trying hard not 1) (feel) sorry for myself, but I must admit it's difficult. I want (be) on the pitch with the rest of the team - not sitting here with a broken leg! My coach was sorry (hear) I had been hurt. Our team doctor told him I wouldn't be able to play again this season. The season won't end for another five months, so I'd prefer (believe) that my leg will heal before then. I mean (do) everything I can to get better. Our team has won all our games this year and if we continue to do so there's a good chance we will go on (play) in the final. I'll never forget (play) in the final last year and I'd love to experience that again! By the way, do you want to come to my house next weekend to watch a film? Remember (bring) my CDs with you if you can! Take care, David

Revision test. Use prepositions with gerund. be bad + *Gerund*; danger + *Gerund*; be crazy + *Gerund*; difficulty + *Gerund*; be ashamed + *Gerund*; idea + *Gerund*; way + *Gerund*; be fond + *Gerund*; succeed + *Gerund*; accused + *Gerund*; dream + *Gerund*; talk + *Gerund*; be interested + *Gerund*; think + *Gerund*; be good + *Gerund*; insist + *Gerund*; complain + *Gerund*; be proud + *Gerund*; rely + *Gerund*; worry + *Gerund*

THEME 1.13. PARTICIPLES. ABSOLUTE CONSTRUCTIONS. COMPARISON OF -ING FORMS

Theoretical background. Participle clauses. In Use, unit 67; Grammar way, 4, p. 37

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Fyr5WhdXoE8&t=25s&ab_channel=angerafe

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sGbHSzTpeHc&ab_channel=Augustran

Exercise 1. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct infinitive form or the -ing form

1. A: Rob was the first (finish) the English test. B: Yes, but (tell) you the truth, I don't think he did very well. 2 A: Good evening. We would like (sit) by the window, please. B: Certainly. If you would be so kind as. (follow) me, I'll show you to your table. 3 A: You should (see) his face when she told him the news. B: He must (be) really surprised. 4 A: I'd love (lie) on the beach right now instead of typing reports. B: Me, too. Just imagine (be) under the sun with nothing to worry about.

Exercise 2. Put the verbs in brackets into the infinitive or -ing form

1. Tom stopped (pick up) his dry cleaning on the way home.
2. If you don't stop (eat) so much chocolate, you'll make yourself ill.
3. Try (phone) John at the office if he's not at home.
4. I tried my best (finish) the test, but there just wasn't enough time.
5. He was promoted in 1990 and went on (become) a company director.
6. The band went on (play) even after the lights had gone out.
7. Jane was afraid (show) her school report to her parents.
8. I'm afraid of (lose) my way in the forest.
9. What do you mean (do) with all that money?
10. Playing a musical instrument well means (practise) for years.
11. I regret (tell) you that your appointment has been cancelled.
12. She regrets (spend) so much money on her new dress.
13. Do you remember (ride) a bicycle for the first time?
14. Remember (post) the letters on your way home.

Exercise 3. Paraphrase the sentences

1. Mum doesn't think Jessica should stay out late with her friends. Mum doesn't want 2 It's Gary's turn to take out the rubbish. Dad insists on it. Dad insists on... 3 Why don't you come to the cinema with us? I would like 4 They must leave now. I want 5 She fell into the swimming pool on her graduation

day. I'll never forget that. I'll never forget 6 I have to finish the project today. I need

Exercise 4. Complete the sentences for each situation

1. Lock the door, OK? She told him to...
2. Why don't you come and stay with us for a few day? Yes, I'd love to. They invited him ...
3. Can I use your phone? No! - She wouldn't let ...
4. Be careful. Don't worry. I will. - She warned ...
5. Can you give me a hand? Yes, of course. - He asked ...

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=8G2kKRqsMuQ&ab_channel=OxfordEnglishNow

Exercise 1. Use participle phrases

1. Because she was tired Katie went to bed.
2. He was sitting in the garden and he was drinking his tea.
3. After Janet had made dinner she called the children.
4. The boy who is standing by the door is my brother.
5. The jewels which were taken by the thieves were very valuable
6. Amy picked up her pen and started to write the letter.
7. The man who is walking towards us is a relative of mine.
8. After the teacher had explained the exercise, he asked the students to do it.
9. Because she had forgotten to take her purse she had to borrow some money from a colleague
10. Donna had a shower before she went to bed.
11. Because we were late we took a taxi
12. Gary opened the window and breathed the fresh air.

Absolute Participle construction.

English Grammar, cc.115-119

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=QBMGGuP9WZ4&ab_channel=TheNatureofWriting

Exercise 2. Translate into Ukrainian

1. **The weather being cold**, he put on his overcoat
2. **The weather having changed**, we decided not to leave.
3. **The bridge having been swept by the flood away**, the train didn't arrive.
4. **There being little time left**, they took a taxi to get to the theatre in time.
5. **It being cold and damp**, the weary travellers made a fire to warm themselves.
6. **It being very late**, they decided to put off their visit.
7. **The sun having set an hour before**, it was getting darker.

8. **The weather being very warm**, the windows were left open.
9. **And the wind having dropped**, they decided to set out to walk.
10. The next morning, **it being Sunday**, they all went to church.
11. **There being nothing else on the table**, the girl said that she wasn't hungry.
12. **The children being tired**, they returned more slowly home.
13. **The wind being very strong**, our yacht couldn't reach the bank of the island.
14. **It being now pretty late**, we took our candles and went upstairs.

Exercise 3. Use Absolute Participial Construction

1. As the front door was open, she could see straight through the house.
2. Rip had no desire to work on his farm, for it was to his mind the worst piece of land in the neighbourhood.
3. They stood there; the night wind was shaking the drying whispering leaves.
4. As the situation was urgent, we had to go ahead.
5. When the greetings were over, Old Jolyon seated himself in a wicker chair.
6. The town of Crewe is known to be one of the busiest junctions in England: many railway lines pass through it.
7. We set off; the rain was still coming down heavily.
8. After a private sitting-room had been engaged, bedrooms inspected and dinner ordered, the party walked out to view the city.
9. Dinner was served on the terrace, as it was very close in the room.
10. Thoughtful, Andrew finished his omelette; his eyes were all the time fixed upon the microscope.
11. There was in fact nothing to wait for, and we got down to work.
12. The question was rather difficult to answer at once, and I asked for permission to think it over.
13. He stood leaning against the wall, his arms were folded.
14. There was very little time left; we had to hurry.
15. Of an evening he read aloud; his small son sat by his side.
16. The new engines were safely delivered, all of them were in good order.
17. Our efforts to start the car had failed, and we spent the night in a nearby village.
18. As our work was finished, we went home.
19. If the letter is posted today, the news will reach them tomorrow.
20. If mother permits us, we shall go to the theatre.

Participles as Adjectives

In Use, units 96, 97

New Round Up, 6, p. 28

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=v_ZAX-71S3E&t=25s&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

Exercise 4. Complete the sentences for each situation. Use the word given + the ending ~ing or ~ed.

1. The film wasn't as good as we had expected. (disappoint-)
 - a. The film was ...disappoint._
 - b. We were disappoint... with the film.
2. Diana teaches young children. It's a very hard job but she enjoys it. (exhaust-)

- a. She enjoys her job but it's often ...
- b. At the end of a day's work, she is often ...
- 3. It's been raining all day. I hate this weather. (depress-)
 - a. This weather is ...
 - b. This weather makes me ...
 - c. It's silly to get ... because of the weather.
- 4. Clare is going to the United States next month. She has never been there before. (excit-)
 - a. It will be an ... experience for her.
 - b. Going to new places is always ...
 - c. She is really ... about going to the United States.

Exercise 5. Complete the sentences using one of the words in the box.

amusing/amused confusing/confused exhausting/exhausted annoying/annoyed disgusting/disgusted interesting/interested boring/bored exciting/excited surprising/surprised

- 1. He works very hard. It's not ... that he's always tired.
- 2. I've got nothing to do. I'm ...
- 3. The teacher's explanation was ... Most of the students didn't understand it.
- 4. The kitchen hadn't been cleaned for ages. It was really ...
- 5. I seldom visit art galleries. I'm not particularly ... in art.
- 6. There's no need to get ... just because I'm a few minutes late.
- 7. The lecture was ... I fell asleep.
- 8. I asked Emily if she wanted to come out with us but she wasn't ...
- 9. I've been working very hard all day and now I'm ...
- 10. I'm starting a new job next week. I'm quite ... about it.
- 11. Tom is very good at telling funny stories. He can be very ...
- 12. Liz is a very ... person. She knows a lot, she's travelled a lot and she's done lots of different things.

Exercise 6. Complete the sentences with the present or past participle of the verbs in brackets

- 1. The (steal) jewelry was recovered.
- 2. Success in one's work is a (satisfy) experience.
- 3. The dragon was a (terrify) sight for the villagers.
- 4. The (terrify) villagers ran for their lives.
- 5. I found myself in an (embarrass) situation last night.
- 6. A kid accidentally threw a ball at one of the school windows. Someone needs to repair the (break) window.
- 7. I elbowed my way through the (crowd) room.
- 8. The thief tried to open the (lock) cabinet.
- 9. The (injure) woman was put into an ambulance.
- 10. That (annoy) buzz is coming from the fluorescent light.
- 11. The teacher gave us a (challenge) assignment, but we all enjoyed doing it.
- 12. The (expect) event did not occur.
- 13. A (grow) child needs a (balance) diet.
- 14. No one appreciates a (spoil) child.
- 15. There is an old saying: Let (sleep) dogs lie.
- 16. We had a (thrill) but hair-raising experience on our

backpacking trip into the wilderness. 17. The (abandon) car was towed away by a tow truck. 18. I still have five more (require) courses to take. 19. I don't have any furniture of my own. Do you know where I can rent a (furnish) apartment? 20. The equator is the (divide) line between the Northern and Southern hemispheres. 21. We all expect our (elect) officials to be honest. 22. The invention of the (print) press was one of the most important events in the history of the world. 23. (Experience) travellers pack lightly. They carry little more than necessities. 25. The psychologist spoke to us about some of the (amaze) coincidences in the lives of twins living apart from each other from birth.

-ING forms differentiation

Grammar way, 4, p. 37

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=WQEb1GYWLrk&ab_channel=MrSkypeleasons

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=-5MbY2V3FsE&ab_channel=HomeRevise

Exercise 7. Define the part of speech

1. Sleeping is necessary. 2. We felt so disappointed at your having missed nearly half the program. 3. The building of this house will cost much money. 4. Are you dressed for going out? 5. I hate the idea of doing it once more. 6. Then came a general lighting of pipes and cigars. 7. But you don't mind being asked to help us, do you? 8. The forest resounded with the hooting of owls and the howling of wolves. 9. She blamed herself for having been a dull companion. 10. The singing of those beautiful folk songs impressed me greatly. 11. Your having written is really no excuse for your not coming on the day fixed. 12. Such doings can hardly be explained. 13. The motor was carefully examined before starting. 14. I am very pleased to meet you after hearing so much about you. 15. Your hair wants cutting. 16. I shall look forward to seeing you again. 17. It was no use talking about it any longer.

Exercise 8. Use Articles

A: What does...word "frontier" mean? Doesn't it mean...line between two countries? I used...word in...conversation with ... American friend yesterday, and he didn't understand what I was saying.

B: No, most Americans use ... word "border" to express that idea. In fact, ... "frontier" has ... very different meaning for us in ... U.S. Actually, ... definition is related to...history of our country. When...English and other European settlers first came to...North America, they built towns and cities on...East Coast. As more colonists came to...new world, towns were built further west. Colonists called...unexplored wilderness beyond...towns and cities ... "frontier".

A: Oh, that's why Americans call space..."last frontier". It means that space is...last unexplored place. I've heard ... phrase several times, but I never

understood it before. Wow, learning ... vocabulary in ...foreign language is really hard!

Exercise 9. Put in the correct preposition

1. I was delighted ... the present you gave me.
2. It was very nice ... you to do my shopping for me. Thank you very much.
3. Why are you always so rude ... your parents? Can't you be nice ... them?
4. It was a bit careless ... you to leave the door unlocked when you went out.
5. They didn't reply to our letter, which wasn't very polite ... them.
6. We always have the same food every day. I'm fed up ... it.
7. I can't understand people who are cruel ... animals.
8. We enjoyed our holiday, but we were a bit disappointed ... the hotel.
9. I was surprised ... the way he behaved. It was completely out of character.
10. I've been trying to learn Spanish but I'm not very satisfied ... my progress.
11. Linda doesn't look very well. I'm worried ... her.
12. Are you angry ... what happened?
13. I'm sorry ... what I said. I hope you're not angry ... me.
14. Jill starts her new job next week. She's quite excited ... it.
15. I'm sorry ... the smell of paint in this room. I've just decorated it.
16. I was shocked ... what I saw. I'd never seen anything like it before.
17. The man we interviewed for the job was intelligent, but we weren't very impressed ... his appearance.
18. Are you still upset ... what I said to you yesterday?
19. He said he was sorry ... the situation but there was nothing he could do.
20. I felt sorry ... the children when we went on holiday. It rained every day and they had to spend most of the time indoors.

Exercise 10. Use the verbs in brackets to complete the sentences. Use the correct tense

1. When I (look) out of the window, I (see) John.
2. you ever (play) the piano since you left school?
3. I (not see) him for two days.
4. When he (try) to open the door, he (drop) his key.
5. They (live) in this house since 1987.
6. My father (wash) his car while my mother and I (prepare) dinner.
7. you (meet) her yesterday?
8. Mary (be) in London for three days.
9. The headmaster (enter) the classroom when they (write) their exams.
10. He (buy) a new car last week.
11. I think that they (arrive) tomorrow morning.
12. Last Wednesday they (play) chess after they (do) their homework.

Homework 1.

1) Combine the two sentences below: Turn the second sentence into an absolute phrase and place it in front of the first sentence

The storks circled above us. Their slender bodies were sleek and black against the orange sky.

2) Combine the two sentences below: Turn the second sentence into an absolute phrase and place it after the first sentence

On the tops of the hills, the grass stands at its tallest and greenest. Its new seed plumes rise through a dead crop of last year's withered spears.

3) Create two absolute phrases by eliminating the words in bold

*Odysseus comes to shore, **and** the skin **is** torn from his hands, **and** the sea water **is** gushing from his mouth and nostrils.*

4) Combine the three sentences below: Turn the second and third sentences into absolute phrases, and position them at the start of the sentence to establish a clear cause-effect relationship

Norton vowed never to marry again. His first marriage ended in divorce. His second marriage ended in despair.

5) Omit the word "when" and turn the main clause—in bold—into an absolute phrase

*When the double giant Ferris wheel circles, **the swaying seats are more frightening than a jet plane flying through a monsoon.***

6) Combine the following four sentences into a single sentence with a present participial phrase and two absolute phrases

All afternoon the caravan passed by. The caravan shimmered in the winter light. Its numberless facets were gleaming. The hundreds of wagon wheels were turning in the dust in slow and endless motion.

7) Combine the following five sentences into a single sentence with a present participial phrase and three absolute phrases

Six boys came over the hill. The boys were running hard. Their heads were down. Their forearms were working. Their breaths were whistling.

8) Begin your new sentence with "The buildings sit empty" and turn the rest of the sentence into an absolute phrase

Jagged pieces of glass stick out of the frames of the hundreds of broken windows in the buildings that sit empty.

9) Combine these sentences by replacing the period with a comma and eliminating the word in bold

*Proud of my freedom and bumhood, I stood in the doorway of the boxcar, rocking with the motion of the train. My ears **were** full of the rushing wind and the clattering wheels.*

10) Combine these three sentences by turning the first sentence into an absolute phrase and the third into a subordinate clause beginning with "where"

His hair was wet from the showers. He walked in the icy air to Luke's Luncheonette. There he ate three hamburgers in a booth with three juniors.

Homework 2. Open the brackets

Carla has always been 1) (interest) in dancing. Even as a young girl, she was always keeping her relatives 2) (entertain) with her performances at home. No

one guessed, however, that by the age of eighteen she would be dancing in 3) (entertain) shows for much larger audiences. Carla's family were 4) (thrill) to witness their little girl's 5) (excite) debut in the local town hall. Carla herself was more 6) (excite) and 7) (frighten) than she'd ever been in her life. Carla soon became famous throughout the country. And now, here she was, dancing for the Queen. How 8) (please) she felt! But the 9) (amaze) reviews she received the next day were even more 10) (thrill) to her!

Additional exercise 1. Choose the correct word

1. I was disappointing/disappointed with the film. I had expected it to be better.
2. Are you interesting/interested in football?
3. The football match was quite exciting/excited I enjoyed it.
4. It's sometimes embarrassing/embarassed when you have to ask people for money.
5. Do you easily get embarrassing/embarassed?
6. I had never expected to get the job. I was really amazing/amazed when I was offered it.
7. She has really learnt very fast. She has made astonishing/astonished progress.
8. I didn't find the situation funny. I was not amusing/amused.
9. It was a really terrifying/terrified experience. Afterwards everybody was very shocking/shocked.
- 10 Why do you always look so boring/bored? Is your life really so boring/bored?
11. He's one of the most boring/bored people I've ever met. He never stops talking and he never says anything interesting/interested.

Additional exercise 2. Use Infinitive Constructions

1. I can see the train. It is coming.
2. I watched the rain. It was beating down the flowers in the garden.
3. I saw a group of boys. They were eating ice-cream.
4. We noticed a group of people. They were digging potatoes in the field.
5. Didn't you see her? She was smiling at you.
6. I should like to see how he would say it to my face.
7. I expect that you will join our excursion.
8. We had not expected that she would reply, but she did.
9. We knew that he was a clever man.
10. I don't like it that you repeat this nonsense.
11. I hate it when people speak so cynically.
12. We expect that everybody will be ready by seven.
13. They showed themselves even more narrow-minded than we had expected they would be.
14. We heard that a car stopped outside the door.
15. It is believed that the poem was written by Byron.

Revision test

1. His new girlfriend ... him to write a new song. His girlfriend was very...
 - a) inspired / inspire
 - b) inspiring / inspired

- c) inspire / inspiring
d) inspired / inspiring
2. We were all ... because the game was very ...
a) bored / bored
b) boring / bored
c) bored / boring
d) boring / boring
3. Mum ... me with a cup of chocolate. The chocolate was very ...
a) comforted / comforted
b) comforted / comforting
c) comforting / comforted
d) comforting / comforting
4. I was rather ... by what he said. His words were very ...
a) offended / offending
b) offended / offensive
c) offending / offended
d) offending / offensive
5. It ... me to see my marks at the end of every term. They are usually very ... marks.
a) depressed / depressed
b) depresses / depressing
c) depresses / depressed
d) depressed / depressing
- 6... she didn't mention her daughter's promotion.
a) Not wishing to boast
b) Her not wishing to boast
c) Alice not wishing to boast
- 7.The company closed for a year of renovations, ...
a) the boss leaving many employees looking for work.
b) leaving many employees looking for work.
c) left many employees looking for work.
- 8... , he had a long holiday.
a) Having finished the novel
b) The novel finished
c) The writer having finished the novel
9. ... with his daughter's behaviour, he bought her sweets.
a) Her daddy pleased
b) Pleased
c) Having pleased
- 10... , Mark retired from international competition.
a) Having won every major judo title
b) Won every major judo title
c) He having won every major judo title

THEME 1.14. REVISION

Exercise 1. Open the brackets

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=mhlljPO_4yc&list=PL7tgy3ZWFgmbawRg5jhttNOzpG6PoGH6f&ab_channel=MistressofPemberley

Finding Shelter

After (travel) for two days in the coach, I was put down at a crossroads on the moor, with no money or possessions, as I realized now that I had left my parcel inside the coach. I was glad (see) there were no towns around as I did not want people (question) me or pity me. After (search) for quite a long time, I found a dry place (sleep), there (be) no rain and it (be) a warm night. In the morning I happened (find) a small village. I needed all my courage (knock) on some of the doors, (ask) if there was any (pay) work I could do, only (refuse) politely. And I could not (bring) myself (beg) for food, although by now I felt weak and faint. All I ate that day was a piece of bread, which I still had to beg from a farmer (eat) his supper. The next day I spent (walk) from house to house, (look) in vain for work. By the end of the day I began (wonder) why I should struggle (stay) alive, when I not (want) (live).

The wind and the rain (beat) down on me, I finally arrived at a long, low house, (stand) (isolate) in the middle of the moor. (Hide) near the door, I could (see) into the kitchen through a small (uncurtain) window. I saw an elderly woman (mend) clothes, and two young ladies, who seemed (learn) a language with dictionaries. The ladies looked so kind and sensible, that I dared (knock) at the door. The elderly woman opened it, but she (must) (think) I was a thief or a beggar, because she refused (let) me (speak) to the young ladies. The door closed firmly, (shut) me out from the warmth inside.

I dropped on to the wet doorstep, (prepare) (die). There the young ladies' brother found me, (return) home a few minutes later, and he insisted (bring) me into the house. They gave me bread and milk, and asked my name. "Jane Elliot," I replied. I did not want anyone (know) who I was and where I had come from. (See) that I was too tired (speak), they helped me upstairs to a bedroom. For three days and nights I lay in bed (exhaust) by my experiences. When I felt strong enough (go) downstairs, the sisters looked after me very kindly, and made me (feel) welcome in their pleasant home. They were sensitive enough (avoid) (ask) questions which would hurt me. I told them only that, after (leave) Lowood school, I became a governess in a wealthy family, where an unfortunate event made me (run) away. I offered them (do) any kind of work, (teach), (sew), (clean), so that I (can) (become) independent again. (*after Charlotte Bronte*)

Exercise 2. Use correct prepositions

1. I get up ... seven o'clock or ... a quarter past seven. 2. ... Sunday I usually get up ... nine o'clock or half past nine. But last Sunday I slept very long and got up

only ... noon. 3. He liked to get up... sunrise. 4. Our lectures are usually over ... twenty minutes to two. 5. They returned from the wood... sunset. 6. I began writing my composition ... seven o'clock and finished only ... midnight. 7. My birthday is ... the ninth of July. 8. The school year begins ... the first of September. 9. ... the twenty-fifth of December people celebrate Christmas. 10... Wednesday I usually have a lot of homework.

Exercise 3. Use correct tenses (Active or Passive)

1. A lot of old songs ... on the radio last week. (play)
2. The President ... about the coup in Central America. (just inform)
3. . The bank manager told me that the house ... for. (not pay)
4. I ... the guitar since I was in nursery school. (play)
5. Margie is very happy because she ... an engagement ring from her boyfriend. (just receive)
6. I ... after the children while the garage (look, repair)
7. When Jane came to the office, she found out that her boss ... (already leave)
8. Please don't interrupt us. We ... an important conversation. (have)
9. I reported to the police that my stamp collection... the week before. (steal)
10. A short time after the pedestrian ... by the car the ambulance (hit, arrive)
11. When Mr Kennel entered the room, emails ... by his assistants. (type)
12. Dad ... for over three weeks. (not smoke)
13. He ... up on his own but yesterday he ... by his mom. (wake, wake)
14. They usually visitors at the hospital. (not allow)
15. All the houses in our street ... every year for Christmas. (decorate)
16. India ... independence in 1947. (grant)
17. They ... in southern Italy since the end of the war. (live)
18. I ... a car by the garage so that I could drive home. (give)

Exercise 4. Use Absolute Participial Construction

1. **When the working day was over**, she went straight home. 2. As a **storm was arising**, the ship entered the harbour. 3. **When the packing had been done**, the girls left for the station. 4. As **the stop was a long one**, the girls got off the train. 5. As **the weather was perfect**, Lydia played tennis every day. 6. As **the last month was a very busy one**, she could not answer her friend's letter. 7. **If time permits**, we shall come a few days earlier. 8. **When the third bell had gone**, the curtain slowly rose. 9. As **the underground station was not far**, we walked there. 10. Bill could not sleep the whole night, **as there was something wrong with his eye**.

Exercise 5. Find and correct the mistakes if any

1. My mother won't let anybody to think ill of him. 2. The party was dull, and we decided to tell stories to make the time to pass. 3. They did their best to

make themselves agreeing to the proposal. 4. He changed his mind to have his house to paint green. 5. Let him choosing his friends himself. 6 I must to go to the doctor yesterday. 7. I suggest to go early. 8. It hasn't rained here since three months. 9. Where's nearest petrol station? 10. Did you born here?

Exercise 6. Use inverted word order

1. They had hardly started the meeting when the manager received a message...the meeting when the manager received a message.
2. She rarely allowed strangers to enter her house. ... strangers to enter her house.
3. I have never witnessed such display of rage! ... such display of rage!
4. One seldom realizes how short life is. ... how short life is.
5. Thomas little knew what the future held in store for him. ... what the future held in store for him.
6. Her brother not only paid her debt, but he also bought a new house for her. ... her debt, but he also bought a new house for her.
7. You should on no account provide any confidential information to a stranger. ... any confidential information to a stranger.
8. He understood only then what he had missed. ... what he had missed.
9. He had no sooner resigned than he received a better job offer. ... than he received a better job offer.
10. You seldom meet such friendly people. ... such friendly people.

Exercise 7. Use the proper form of the non-finite verb

1. (to recollect) the invitation of the schoolmaster, he inquired the way to Curran Street, where, closely (to regard) by the neighbours, he knocked several times on the door of No 29. 2. There was some dignity which Aunt Calpurnia and Aunt Josephine had acquired. (to live) here beside the proud sea, that would not let them (to show) surprise. 3. (to surround) by difficulties and uncertainty, he longed for Christine. Letters were no use; he had no talent for (to express) himself on paper. Yet she was not returning to Blanelly until the first week in September. He turned a fretful, hungry eyes upon the calendar (to count) the days that intervened. There were still twelve of them to run. He felt, with (to grow) despondency, that they might as well be past, for all the prospect which they held for him. 4. Far from (to annoy) Claire this has delighted her. 5. I want (to read) and I think I am justified in doing what I can (to make) my book readable. 6. Gracie, her hands tightly (to clench), turned away her head. 7. I hoped that I should never (to send) to that war. 8. He was silent. It was not difficult (to guess) what she had discovered. 9. I supposed she was nervous and wanted (to delay) as long as possible (to meet) the strange woman who had come (to take) her place. 10. A silence followed, during which he continued (to regard) Stephen with a satiric compression of his lips. Once he seemed about (to speak) but instead he shrugged slightly, beckoned with a finger for fresh drinks

and began (to talk) about the next day's races. 11. The very simplicity of the jewelry seemed (to demand) attention. 12. (to bounce) on the rough springs of the taxi seat (to move) along the foreign streets she didn't know what she wished (to communicate) to her son.

Exercise 8. Use necessary transformations

1. A little water is in the bucket. *amount* There...
2. "I'm sorry I broke the plate," she said to me. *apologised* She ... the plate.
3. "What am I expected to talk about?" she asked. *wondered* She ... to talk about.
4. "Don't leave the oven on," she told me. *warned* She. the oven on.
5. The army has many soldiers. *great* There soldiers in the army.
6. He told the waiter he was dissatisfied with his meal. *complained* He..... his meal.
7. "No, I won't tell you the secret", she said to him. *refused* She ... the secret.
8. This bread is made with brown flour. *used* Brown flour.... this bread.
9. He reminded me to go to the supermarket. *not* He.... to go to the supermarket.
10. He had never eaten octopus before. *first* It he had ever eaten octopus
11. Would you mind lending me your pen? *kind* Would you be ... me your pen?
12. He'll probably arrive late to the party. *likely* He..... late to the party.
13. It was the fastest car he had ever driven. *never* He had fast car.
14. Fred finds it difficult to understand British accents. *difficulty* Fred British accents.
15. You mustn't bring food into the library. *allowed* You food...

Exercise 9. Turn the following into direct speech

1. Tom apologised for forgetting my birthday.
2. Frank admitted to breaking the window.
3. The teacher explained to us how to do the experiment.
4. He denied having stolen the money.
5. Steve begged his father to buy him a car.
6. The headmaster accused him of cheating on the test.
7. Lisa claimed to have travelled around China.

Exercise 10. Choose A, AN, THE or (/) for "no article" for each blank below

A: Have you ever thought about buying ... electric car? With ... price of gas at more than \$4.00 ... gallon, it's starting to look like ... very good option for people trying to save .. money.

B: Yes, I have. In fact, I've been doing ... little research into ... electric cars recently. I went to ... car dealer ... last week and test-drove ... couple of electric cars just to get ... feeling for what was out there.

A: So do you think they are ... good choice for ... person like me who thinks ... price of gas has gotten ... bit out of control?

B: That's ... hard question to answer. For example, ... first car I tried was amazing, but I almost had ... heart attack when I saw ... price. And ... second car I tested was ... inexpensive model, but it was ... relatively slow car, and ... battery was too small. You could only drive ... car for ... few hours before you had to recharge. And with ... few public charging stations, that's not ... easy thing to do.

Prepositions memory game https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=f2MkzbUpt-c&t=23s&ab_channel=Games4esl

Articles

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9fgQaoDNU2k&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

Tenses Perfect simple and Continuous

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=lvoc5vDrb8E&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

Tick-tack-toe 1

LIE	TEACH	SEW
PROVE	LAY	KNEEL
FLY	FLEE	BRING

Tick-tack-toe 2

SINCE	JUST	AGO
BY	CURRENTLY	OFTEN
I THINK TOMORROW...	BY...FOR	TOMORROW AT THIS TIME

PART 2

THEME 2.1. CONDITIONAL MOOD

Revision.

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hWUMrQ5PqA&ab_channel=EVERWIN_SCHOOL

Theoretical Background. Grammar Way, pp.126-127, 130. Підручник Л.Г.Верби, сс.60-62. New Round Up 6, p.140-155. In Use, Units 37-39

Exercise 1. Use correct tenses

1. If I were a ghost I (try) to frighten all the people I dislike.
2. He (know) her for a long time before he finally got married to her.
3. I hope it (not rain) when we leave church.
4. Since you gave me your number I (phone) you four times and (not find) you at home.
5. (you, ever meet) our president ?
6. It (take) a long time for man to learn to make tools and weapons.
7. John came in with a very dirty face and I wondered what he (do).
8. They (live) in Liverpool for ten years when I first met them.
9. This is my house. How long (you, live) here ? I (live) here since 1990.
10. Shakespeare (write) a lot of plays.
11. My brother (write) several plays. He (just finish) his second tragedy.
12. I (not see) him for three years. I wonder where he is.
13. He (not smoke) for two weeks. He (try) to give it up.
14. Chopin (compose) some of his music in Majorca.
15. I (read) his books when I was at school. I (enjoy) them very much.
16. I can't go out because I (not finish) my work yet.
17. The clock is slow. It isn't slow, it (stop).
18. Here are your shoes. I (just clean) them.
19. I (do) this sort of work when I (be) in the army.
20. He (go) out ten minutes ago.
21. (you have) breakfast yet ? Yes, I (have) it at 8 o'clock.
22. The play (just begin). You're a bit late.
23. The actors (arrive) yesterday and (start) rehearsals early this morning.
24. It (be) very cold this year. I wonder when it will get warmer.
25. He (break) his leg in a skiing accident last year.
26. Mr. Pound is a bank manager. He (be) here for 25 years.
27. (you be) here before? Yes, I (spend) my holidays here last year. (you have) a good time ? No, it never (stop) raining.
28. (you ever try) to give up smoking ? Yes, I (try) last year, but I (find) that I was getting so fat so I (start) again.
29. How (you, get) that scar ? I (get) it in a car accident a year ago.

Exercise 2. Complete the sentences using the words in italics

1. It wasn't necessary for us to go to the party. *needn't*
2. She will probably pass her exams. *likely*
3. Shall I make you an omelette? *like*
4. It was the most entertaining show she had ever seen. *never*
5. I haven't been to the cinema for a year. *last*
6. She spent an hour preparing for the party. *took*
7. You mustn't feed the zoo animals. *allowed*
8. I'm sure Mary didn't finish the race yet. *finished*.
9. Ann finds it difficult to get up in the morning. *difficulty*
10. I prefer working to staying at home. *rather*
11. How long ago did she start the course? *since*
12. Tim was too young to see the film. *old*

Exercise 3. Correct mistakes

1. We waited for you by it got dark.
2. When the Queen will arrive, we must all stand up.
3. As soon as I'll get home, I'll have something to eat.
4. Can you phone me when you will be ready?
5. Every time I will go shopping, I spend too much money.
6. I'll phone you if there will be a problem.
7. The children cleared the table by the time they had finished eating.
8. Until we went to bed, it was nearly morning.
9. I'll call you immediately as I reach my hotel.

Exercise 4. Cross out the unnecessary words

1. I would really love to know what my mother have said to him.
2. The old lady did asked me where the bank was.
3. They asked me what was I was doing.
4. I asked my uncle if he has ever went to Mexico.
5. My mother has asked me if I wanted to eat dinner or not.
6. We wondered that if somebody was going to call the police eventually.
7. David asked to me where I usually park my car in the morning.
8. I wanted to know if I must had to do the composition for Tuesday or Wednesday.

Exercise 5. Use correct Verbals

1. The old miser spent all his time (count) his money and (think) up new hiding-places. He kept (move) it about because he was terrified of (be robbed). He used (get) up at night sometimes (make) sure it was still there.
2. Jack suggested (let) one flat and (keep) the other for myself. But Tom advised me (sell) the whole house.

3. The child used (lean) on the gate (watch) the people (go) to work in the mornings and (come) home in the evenings. And he used to hear them (shout) greetings to each other and (talk) loudly.
4. He soon got (know) most of them and even managed (learn) the greetings. Then they began (greet) him too on their way to work and sometimes would stop (talk) to him on their way home.
5. He succeeded in (untie) himself, (climb) out of the window and (crawl) along a narrow ledge to the window of the next room.
6. Did you have any trouble (find) the house? – No, but I had a lot of difficulty (get) in. Nobody seemed (know) where the key was.
7. Bill couldn't bear (see) anyone (sit) round idly. Whenever he found me (relax) or (read) he would (produce) a job which, he said, had (be) done at once. I wasted a morning (perform) his ridiculous tasks and spent the rest of the weekend (keep) out of his way.
8. After (spend) a week in the cottage, he decided that he didn't really enjoy (live) in the country and began (think) of an excuse for (sell) the cottage and (return) to London.
9. It's no use (argue) with him. You might as well (argue) with a stone wall. He is incapable of (see) anyone else's point of view.
10. I'm delighted (hear) that you can come on Saturday. We are all looking forward to (see) you. Remember (bring) your rubber boots.
11. He has been charged with (receive) and (sell) stolen goods. He has admitted (receive) but denies (sell) them. The fact is that he hasn't had time (sell) them yet.
12. He noticed the helicopter (hover) over the field. Then, to his astonishment, he saw a rope ladder (be) thrown out and three men (climb) down it. He watched them (run) across the field and out through a gate. Later he saw a car with four men in it (come) out of the lane (lead) to the field.
13. He admitted that it was possible that the car happened (be passing) and that the three men persuaded the driver (give) them a lift; but thought it much more likely that they had arranged for the car (pick) them up and that the driver had been waiting in the lane for the helicopter (drop) them.
14. What about (have) a picnic in Piccadilly Circus? – What an extraordinary place (have) a picnic! Fancy (sit) there with the traffic (swirl) round you and the pigeons (take) bites out of your sandwiches!
15. Would you mind (write) your address on the back of the cheque and (show) us some proof of your identity?
16. Let's (swim) across. – I'm not really dressed for (swim). What's wrong with (go) round by the bridge?

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PiBLQfNb8RQ&ab_channel=OxfordEnglishNow

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=bX7nTzbhOe4&ab_channel=LearnEasyEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gxaTP6zF9Vc&ab_channel=EasyEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tcOLyvkBc48&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=cWrUpoEaaEg&ab_channel=ZNOUA

Exercise 1. Put the verb into the correct form

1. They would be rather offended if I didn't go to see them. (not/go)
2. If you took more exercise, you would feel better. (feel)
3. If I was offered the job, I think I ... it. (take)
4. I'm sure Amy will lend you the money. I'd be very surprised if she ... (refuse)
5. If I sold my car, I ... much money for it. (not/get)
6. A lot of people would be out of work if the factory (close down)
7. What would happen if I that red button? (press)
8. Liz gave me this ring. She ... very upset if I lost it. (be)
9. Mark and Carol are expecting us. They would be disappointed if we ... (not/come)
10. Would Tim mind if I ... his bicycle without asking him? (borrow)
11. If somebody ... in here with a gun, I'd be very frightened. (walk)
12. I'm sure Sue ... if you explained the situation to her. (understand)

Exercise 2. You ask a friend questions. Use What would you do if ...?

1. (Maybe one day your friend will win a lot of money.)
What would you do if you won a lot of money?
2. (Your friend's car has never been stolen but perhaps one day it will be.)
What ...
3. (Perhaps one day your friend will lose his/her passport.)
4. (There has never been a fire in the building.)

Exercise 3. Complete the sentences using the third conditional

1. If you (look) more carefully, you (find) your house keys.
2. Don't worry, the dog (eat) if he (be) hungry.
3. If we (wait) any longer, we (burn) the cookies.
4. It was definitely a UFO! You (think) the same if you (see) it too!
5. I think she (say) no if you (ask) her on a date.
6. He (call) if his phone (not/die) .
7. I (not/offer) the asking price if I (know) about all the problems.
8. We (not/be) late if James (remember) the tickets.
9. I (buy) the dress if it (not/be) so expensive.
10. If the bar (not/close) at 12, we (stay) out all night!

11. If you (have) the option, (you/stay) in Paris for longer?
12. If we (negotiate) a bit, (they/reduce) the price?
13. If you (know) about the crime, (you/tell) the police?
14. If we (meet) 20 years ago, (we/be) friends?
15. (she/leave) if we (try) harder?

Exercise 4. Rewrite the sentences using inversion

1. If he had known about the meeting, he would have come. Had he...
2. If the plane leaves on time, I'll arrive in Paris at noon. Should
3. If you had left earlier, you wouldn't have missed the bus. Had...
4. If I were you, I wouldn't tell anyone about it. Were ...
5. If you see Paul, tell him I want to see him. Should...
6. If he had studied harder, he would have passed the test. Had ...
7. If you drink too much coffee, you won't be able to sleep. Should...
8. If I were you, I would write him a thank-you letter. Were ...

Exercise 5. Insert Articles

1. Are you coming to ... party next Saturday?
2. I bought ... new TV set yesterday.
3. I think ... man over there is very ill. He can't stand on his feet.
4. I watched ... video you had sent me.
5. She was wearing ... ugly dress when she met him.
6. I am crazy about reading ... history books.
7. She is nice girl.
8. Do you want to go to ... restaurant where we first met?
9. He is engineer.
10. He thinks that love is what will save us all.

Exercise 6. Underline the correct preposition and fill in the gaps with the form of the verb in brackets

1. It was difficult for Laura to get used to / (live in a foreign country).
2. David is looking forward about / to ((travel) across Asia this summer).
3. Peter is accustomed to / in . . . (work) long hours in the office.
4. There's no point in / about . (ask) me again - I've made up my mind.
5. Lisa admitted to / in ((wear) her sister's top without asking.
6. Bob also did the washing-up *besides* / *except* (clean) his room.
7. What's the use of / with (paint) the house if we are going to sell it soon?
8. As well as / with (raise) money for children, the charity offers advice to parents.

Exercise 7. Use correct tenses

1. What (Helen, do) for the last two hours? - She (prepare) for next week's meeting; she (dust) the furniture now.

2. His sister (be) in Australia six times and I (be) there twice.
3. We (live) in Johannesburg since World War II and so far we (never, intend) to leave the country, but the situation (turn) so bad that we (decide) to go back to Austria.
4. We must wake her. She (sleep) for 15 hours.
5. How many customers (Sally, call) last week?
6. Some time ago Mr Pale (ask) me to lend him some money.
7. Demonstrators (block) the road for three hours.
8. When (you, switch) on the light today?
9. I could not answer the door because I (have) a shower.
10. No, we (not be) here before.

Exercise 8. Make necessary transformations

1. None of the phones were left when we got to the shop.
Time ...the shop, all the phones had been sold.
2. I didn't know it was Carl until he took off his hat.
when Only...his hat did I recognise Carl.
3. Don't waste your time asking Bryan to come with us.
Worth It's.....to come with us.
4. Perhaps John heard the story from Pippa.
Have Pippa might....story.
5. Until they fire me as manager here, I'll run the company my way.
Long the boss, I'll run the company my way.
6. The school's management are investigating allegations of teacher brutality.
Into Allegations of teacher brutality.....the school's management.
7. It's not possible that you saw Mary last night, she was with us!
Have. You....last night, she was with us!
8. The beach was fun even though it was too cold.
Fact too cold, the beach was fun.

Exercise 9. Choose the correct answer

1. Not for many months *we did we didn't we find* a solution to the problem.
2. Nobody knows *what why where* the company went bust.
3. Jin said she *hadn't been isn't wasn't* interested in going to a museum.
4. If I *would have I will have I had gone* to Osaka, I'd have felt the earthquake.
5. I'm *serious seriously more seriously* considering looking for a new job.
6. Paul said he *would will was* make a cup of tea.

Homework 1. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense

1. A: My mobile phone hasn't been working lately. B: If I ...you ...(get) a new one.
2. A: If you ... (not/help) me, I ... (never/pass) the driving test. B: I was glad to be of assistance.

3. A: Can I go to the cinema tonight? B: OK. As long as you (do) your chores first.
4. A: If you ... (go) to the chemist's, ... (you/get) me some vitamin tablets? B: No problem.
5. A: Unless you ... (practise) regularly, you ... (not/become) a good golf player. B: I know. I'll try my best.
6. A: That bag seems too heavy for the old woman. B: If I were you, I ... (offer) to carry it for her.
7. Suppose you ... (lose) your house keys, what ... (you/do)?
8. If I were you, I ... (accept) the invitation.
9. If Alan ... (not/wake up) late, he would have arrived at work on time.
10. I ... (go) to the gym providing I have time after work.
11. If Karen ... (not/have to) finish an essay tonight, she would come to the cinema.
12. If you ... (wear) your raincoat, you wouldn't have got wet.
13. Unless the weather... (improve), we ... (not/go) camping this weekend.
14. Only if David (arrive) home soon, will we go to the cinema.
15. But for one mistake, Brian ... (get) all the questions correct on the test.

Homework 2. Rewrite the following as mixed conditional sentences

1. She isn't at the meeting because she wasn't told about it. If she
2. They didn't eat any breakfast. They're hungry now.
3. Susan is inexperienced. She didn't take the job.
4. He didn't train every day. He won't win the race.
5. I didn't book seats. We can't go to the concert tonight.
6. He isn't driving carefully. He crashed the car into a tree.
7. I don't know him very well. I didn't invite him to my party.
8. You don't pay attention. You made so many mistakes.

For each question, read the situation and choose the best sentence using the third conditional

1. I wasn't thirsty. I didn't drink the lemonade.
 If I was thirsty, I would drink the lemonade
 If I had been thirsty, I would've drunk the lemonade
 If I would have been thirsty, I drank the lemonade
2. I didn't know Kirsty was in town. I didn't call her.
 If I had known Kirsty was in town, I would have called her
 I had called Kirsty if I had know she was in town
 I would had called Kirsty if I have known she was in town
3. I didn't know watching this documentary was important for our exam. I didn't watch it.
 If I knew this documentary was important, I had watched it
 If I would have known this documentary was important, I had watched it
 If I had known this documentary was important, I would've watched it

4. I walked home from the disco. My friend was too drunk to drive.
 I hadn't walked home from the disco if my friend wasn't too drunk to drive
 I wouldn't have walked home from the disco if my friend hadn't been too drunk to drive
 I wouldn't had walked home from the disco if my friend hadn't been too drunk to drive
5. I didn't go to the store. I thought it closed at 5pm. It closed at 6pm.
 If I had known the store had closed at 6pm, I would've gone
 If I knew the store would have closed at 6pm, I would've gone
 I would've gone to the store if I know it had closed at 6pm
6. I ate the yoghurt in the fridge. I thought it was mine, not yours.
 If I would have known the yoghurt was yours, I wouldn't have eaten it
 If I had known the yoghurt was yours, I wouldn't have eaten it
 I hadn't eaten the yoghurt if I knew it was yours
7. I am really hungry now. I didn't have any breakfast.
 If I had some breakfast, I wouldn't be hungry now.
 If I would had had some breakfast, I wouldn't be hungry now.
 If I had had some breakfast, I wouldn't be hungry now
8. I didn't see Tony at the party. I wanted to speak to him about his vacation in France.
 If I saw Tom at the party, I would've spoken to him
 If I had seen Tom at the party, I would've spoken to him
 If I would have seen Tom at the party, I would've spoken to him

Additional exercise 1. Fill in: if or unless

- 1.... you take a taxi, you won 't get to the airport on time.
- 2.... it rains heavily tomorrow, I won 't go to football practice.
- 3 ... you have booked a table, you won't be able to eat here tonight.
- 4 I have enough time this weekend, I'll visit my grandmother.
- 5 you are willing to study very hard, you'll never pass the test.
- 6 I find a cheap flight, I won 't be going abroad this summer.
- 7.... he sets his alarm, he won 't wake up on time in the morning.
- 8 ... I go to Paris, I'll buy lots of souvenirs.

Additional exercise 2. Transform the sentences

1. He always gets top marks in mathematics because it is his favourite subject and he works a lot at it. If ...
2. I did not translate the article yesterday because I had no dictionary. If ...
3. We lost our way because the night was pitch-dark. If ...
4. The box was so heavy that I could not carry it. That's why I took a taxi. If ...
5. I had a bad headache yesterday, that's why I did not come to see you. If ...
6. The ship was sailing near the coast, that's why it struck a rock. If ...
7. He was not in town, therefore he was not present at our meeting. If ...

8. The pavement was so slippery that I fell and hurt my leg. If ...
9. They made a fire, and the frightened wolves ran away. If ...
10. It is late, and I have to go home. If ...
11. I was expecting my friend to come, that's why I could not go to the cinema with you. If ...
12. The sea is rough, and we cannot sail to the island. If ...
13. He is busy and does not come to see us. If ...
14. The girl did not study well last year and received bad marks. If ...
15. He broke his bicycle and so he did not go to the country. If ...
16. He speaks English badly: he has no practice. If ...

Revision test

1. If I *am will be were had been would be would have been* stronger, I'd help you carry the piano.
2. If we'd seen you, we *stop will stop stopped had stopped would stop would have stopped*.
3. If we *meet will meet met had met would meet would have met* him tomorrow, we'll say hello.
4. He would have repaired the car himself if he *has will have had had had would have would have had* the tools.
5. If you drop the vase, *it breaks will break broke had broken would break would have broken*.
6. If I hadn't studied, I *do not pass will not pass did not pass had not passed would not pass would not have passed* the exam.
7. I wouldn't go to school by bus if I *have will have had had had would have would have had* a driving licence.
8. If she *doesn't see won't see hadn't seen didn't see wouldn't see wouldn't have seen him* every day, she'd be lovesick.
9. I *don't travel won't travel didn't travel hadn't travelled wouldn't travel wouldn't have travelled to* London if I don't get a cheap flight.
10. We'd be stupid if we *tell will tell told had told would tell would have told* him about our secret.

THEME 2.2. SUPPOSITIONAL MOOD

Revision

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wgc8gOi0nyg&ab_channel=Rockin%27EnglishLessons

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=bDjmTv7Z-B8&ab_channel=dimasmartinez

Theoretical background. Suppositional Mood. Subjunctive 1
Verba textbook, pp.67-69

Exercise 1. Rephrase the following using unless

1. If the neighbours don't stop shouting, I'll call the police.
2. If he doesn't pay the fine, he may go to prison.
3. If the traffic isn't heavy, we should arrive by 10 pm.
4. If the buses aren't running, we'll get a taxi.
5. If the athlete doesn't improve his speed, he won't break the record.
6. If the weather doesn't act better, we will cancel the football game.

Exercise 2. Put these words into the correct order to make third conditional sentences. The first word in each question is "if"

1. 7.30 / for / I/ would / I / work / bus, / have / hadn't / the / if / caught / late / been
2. known / be / you / if / so / angry, / you'd / I / have / wouldn't / told / . / I'd
3. built / the / wouldn't / it / better, / have / building / been / if / had / . / collapsed
4. have / they / would / my / if / . / you, / happy / met / sisters / been / had
5. . / the / had / rained / have / it / for / river / hour, / if / would / flooded / another
6. have / money / the / . / you / given / I'd / if / earlier, / you / I / seen / would
7. have /in/ to / if / would / I'd / live / I/to / speak / able / gone / Paris /been /French,
8. we / we / if / bed / extra / prepared / have / could / you / had / were / known / the / . / coming,

Exercise 3. Underline the correct item

1. A: Could we have a table for four, please? B: Only if/Supposing you have a reservation, sir. We are very busy tonight.
2. A: Would you like to go bowling this evening, Steve?
B: I'd love to; providing/unless I finish this report by 5 o'clock.
3. A: Unless/As long as you train hard, you won 't be ready to run the marathon next month. B: I know; I'm trying to run a few kilometres every day.
4. A:Hurry up or else/but for we'll miss the train! B: I'm walking as fast as I can!
5. A:But for/Only if Tom's mistake, we would have won that game. B:I know, but we shouldn't blame him.

6. A: Supposing/Provided you forgot your wallet at home, what would you do?
B: I'd probably borrow some money from a classmate.

Exercise 4. Put the verb into the correct form

1. I didn't know you were in hospital. If I'd known (I/know), I would have gone (I/go) to visit you.
2. Ken got to the station in time to catch his train. If ... (he/miss) it ... (he/be) late for his interview.
3. It's good that you reminded me about Ann's birthday. ... (I/forget)if ... (you/not/remind) me.
4. Unfortunately, I didn't have my address book with me when I was in New York. If ... (I/have) your address, ... (I/send) you a postcard.
5. A: How was your holiday? Did you have a nice time?
B: It was OK, but ... (we/enjoy) it more if ... (the weather/be) better.
6. I took a taxi to the hotel but the traffic was very bad. ... (it/be) quicker if ... (I/walk).
7. I'm not tired. If ... (I/be) tired, I'd go home now.
8. I wasn't tired last night. If ... (I/be) tired, I would have gone home earlier.

Exercise 5. Open the brackets

1. We suggested (sleep) in hotels but the children were anxious (camp) out.
2. Paul: Would you like (come) to a lecture on Wagner tonight? Ann: No, thanks. I like (listen) to music but I don't like (listen) to people (talk) about it.
3. If you want the milkman (leave) you milk in the morning, remember (put) a milk bottle outside your door.
4. They let us park motorcycles here but they won't allow us (park) cars.
5. They don't allow (smoke) in the auditorium; they don't want (risk) (set) it on fire, but you can (smoke) in the foyer during the interval.
6. Mr Shaw is very busy (write) his memoirs. He is far too busy (receive) callers (he is so busy that he can't receive callers), so you'd better just (go) away.
7. What about (buy) double quantities of everything today? That will save (shop) again later in the week.
8. The inspector asked (see) my ticket and when I wasn't able (find) it he made me (buy) another. – He probably suspected you of (try) (travel) without one.
9. Would you like me (turn) down the radio a bit? – No, it's all right. I'm used to (work) with the radio on.
10. One of the gang suggested (take) the body out to sea, (drop) it overboard and (pretend) that it had been an accident.
11. I want the boy (grow) up hating violence but his father keeps (buy) him guns and swords. – It's almost impossible (prevent) boys (play) soldiers.
12. Would you children mind (keep) quiet for a moment? I'm trying (fill) in a form. – It's no use (ask) children (keep) quiet. They can't help (make) a noise.

13. I'm thinking of (go) to Oxford tomorrow on my motorbike. Would you like (come)? – No, thanks. I want (go) Oxford, but I'd rather (go) by train. I loathe (travel) by road.

14. Let's (go) (fish) today. There's a nice wind. What about (come) with us, Ann? – No, thanks. I'm very willing (cut) sandwiches for you but I've no intention of (waste) the afternoon (sit) in a boat (watch) you two (fish).

15. He resented (be) asked (wait). He expected the minister (see) him at once.

16. The police have put up a railing here (prevent) people (rush) out of the station and (dash) straight across the road.

17. All day long we saw the trees (toss) in the wind and heard the waves (crash) against the rocks.

18. I didn't mean (eat) anything but the cakes looked so good that I couldn't resist (try) one.

19. Do you feel like (walk) there or shall we (take) a bus? – I'd rather (go) by bus. Besides, it'll take ages (get) there on foot.

20. All right. When would you like (start)? In a few minutes? – Oh, let's wait till it stops (rain); otherwise we will get wet through (walk) to the bus station.

It's necessary, important desirable, ordered, demanded, recommended, order, suggest, demand, required, advisable, recommend, lest

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=5gRWqXgyVHg&ab_channel=JeaniethEnglishTeacher

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=O-PVQHUSQrk&ab_channel=EnglishwithJennifer

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UchifoqFGNA&ab_channel=GrammarMonster

Exercise 1. Complete the following sentences using Subjunctive I or the Suppositional Mood

In object clauses

1. We propose... 2. The doctor advised... 3. I insist... 4. The chief ordered... 5. The teacher recommended... 6. The guide suggested... 7. The manager demanded ...

In predicative appositive clauses

1. The order was ... 2. His suggestion is ... 3. My advice is... 4. The matter is... 5. The workers' demands were... 6. Her desire was ... 7. Father's ambition was...

In attributive clauses

1. He acted under the instruction... 2. There was no end to their surprise... 3. He voiced the common desire of us all... 4. She couldn't wave off the fear... 5. I expressed my great disbelief...

In subject clauses after the expression of personal reaction

1.It's ironic ...2. Is it advisable ...? 3. It was unbelievable ...4. Isn't it strange...? 5. It's rather odd...6. It's so disappointing ... 7. It's surprising...

Exercise 2. Open the brackets

1. She was afraid lest she (lose) her gloves.
2. She was anxious lest the children (forget) to take the key.
3. Her fear was lest they (misinterpret) her words.
4. I fear lest early frosts (damage) the apple-trees.
5. She feared lest she (invite) to this party.
6. I had a panic of fear lest they (see) me.
7. My fear is lest he (mix) up everything.
8. I worry lest he (fall) ill. He is running a temperature.
9. She was uneasy lest she (disturb) her neighbours.

Exercise 3. Open the brackets: Pattern: It's highly advisable that something /to be done/ about his pronunciation - should be done

1. It is requested that the latecomers /to take/ seats in the gallery. 2. It is of importance that the children /to have/ some interest in common. 3. It was arranged that the pamphlet /to be delivered/ by the postman along with the morning mail. 4. It was proposed that no child over twelve /to be admitted/. 5. It is important that Ann (to be) present when we sign the papers. 6. It is essential that Mr.Bell (to be allowed) to make a speech. 7. It is desirable that Helen (not to interrupt) us.

Exercise 4. Paraphrase the following using the Suppositional Mood

1. It is unusual for him to have made such a mistake. 2. It is advisable for everybody to consult a doctor before going to the South. 3. It is unbelievable for the tourists to have crossed the river. 4. It was suggested that the meeting be put. 5. It is necessary for the children to sleep in the open air. 6. It is doubtful that he be still working at the laboratory. 7. It is strange for you not to know such simple facts at your age. 8. Is it possible for the child to have done such a thing all by himself? 9. It was quite unnatural for her to protest against such a demand. 10. Isn't it surprising he have given his consent at once?

Exercise 5. Match the English proverbs with their Ukrainian equivalents

1. If you have to choose between a good reputation and great wealth, choose a good reputation. 2. If you falter in a time of trouble, how small is your strength! 3. If at first you don't succeed, try, try again. 4. If the mountain will not come to Muhammad, then Muhammad must go to the mountain 5. If you buy cheaply, you pay dearly. 6.If a thing is worth doing, it's worth doing well. 7. If life gives you lemons, make lemonade. 8. If you can't be good, be careful. 9. If you can't beat them, join them. 10. If you can't take the heat, get out of the kitchen.

А. Крапля камінь точить В. Якщо ти в день недолі знесилився, то мала твоя сила. С. Ліпше добре ім'я за багатство велике. D. Не вмієш, не берись Е. Скупий платить двічі. F. З ким поведешся, від того і наберешся. G. Якщо гора не іде до Магомета, Магомет іде до гори. H. Свої біди перетворюй в перемоги. I. Взвсяся за гуж - не кажи, що не дуж. J. Не можеш боротися, тоді очолюй. K. Не можеш робити добре, роби ретельно.

Exercise 6. Insert Articles

1. The table was made of ... wood. 2. ... water in that pot is not fit for drinking. 3. ... sweets we took after meals were tasty. 4. When do you have ... breakfast ? 5. Are you attending ... dinner tonight ? 6. Why do we wear ... clothes ? 7. ... man and ... woman were sitting opposite me. 8. During our holiday, we stayed at ... hotel. 9. For our dinner, we went to ... restaurant. 10. As it was raining I took ... umbrella. 11. On the way, I saw ... elephant. 6. I am ... Indian whereas you are ... Chinese.

Exercise 7. Insert Prepositions

1. There were no pictures or posters *at in on* the wall.
2. The bank is *at in on* the end of the street.
3. "Where is my wallet?" It's funny but you have left it *at in on* the bathroom."
4. I'll be *at in on* home tonight so you can call me if you have questions.
5. Do you live *at in on* the city or the countryside?
6. Joshua grew up *at in on* a farm so it was difficult for him at first to get used to the pace of life in London.
7. Are you already *at in on* the airport?
8. The family was sitting *at in on* the table and having dinner when I came in.
9. Is your apartment *at in on* the first or second floor?
10. I will meet Julian *at in on* the party tonight and tell him you want to see him.

Exercise 8. Use correct tenses

1. The man said that he (to miss) the train and he (to take) a bus. 2. He looks as if he (to know everybody). 3. He (not, to open) the door tomorrow unless he (to know) who it is. 4. If he (to work) hard last week, he (can, to be) free today. 5. The teacher (to be angry) if the pupil (to make) many mistakes in the composition next week. 6. He requested that he (to allow) to see the head of the department. 7. He is a sound sleeper and you (not to wake) him up even if your voice (to be) as loud as a train whistle. 8. Your room is untidy. It's time you (to clean) it. 9. She could discuss the latest novel as though she (to read) it. 10. It's strange that he (to skip lessons) last year.

Exercise 9. Make necessary transformations.

1. Tom started learning the guitar a month ago. Tom has...the guitar for a month.

2. I haven't been to a Chinese restaurant for ages.It's ages...to a Chinese restaurant
3. When she heard the results, Mary began to feel more self-confident. Since hearing the results Mary more self-confident.
4. The last time Nancy came here was in 2005. Nancy hasn't here since 2005.
5. This is my first visit to London. This is the first time I...to London.
6. How long have Helen and Robert been married? When...married?
7. Jack bought those trousers last month, and has been wearing them ever since. Jack has....those trousers ever since he bought them last month.
8. It's a long time since our last conversation. We haven't...a conversation for a long time.

Exercise 10. Correct mistakes if any

1. He's the one which has the blue tie on.
2. We like very much the new secretary.
3. Could you tell me how can I get in touch with Mr. Yamamoto?
4. We're not sure he is enough experienced for the position.
5. She's very sick and has been at the hospital for two weeks.
6. We talked during three hours this morning.
7. We're using all the informations we have to make an informed decision.
8. They change often our seats at work.
9. They don't let us to send our clients gifts without getting approval from management first.
10. Do we have some coffee or tea to offer our guests?

Homework 1. Replace the infinitive in brackets by the correct form of Subjunctive I or the Suppositional Mood:

1. It's necessary that students (to take interest) in public life.
2. It's required that the ticket (to retain) till the end of the performance.
3. It's desirable that we (to keep) informed regularly about your whereabouts.
4. Was it so important that he (to be) present.
5. It is not advisable that children (not to sleep) after midnight.
6. I suggest that Frank (to read) the instruction carefully before assembling the bike.
7. Miss Conway demanded that the heater (to fix) immediately as she was freezing.
8. The monk insisted that the visitors (not to enter) the temple until they had taken off their shoes.
9. Jacob asked that we (to attend) his graduation ceremony.
10. It is essential that the life guard (to monitor) the swimming pool.
11. Though it (to snow), we have to start off.
12. Whatever you (to propose) they will never accept.
13. We were afraid lest the police (arrive).

14. The seller covered the goods with tarpaulin lest they (to damage) by rain.

Paraphrase the following sentences using the Oblique Moods:

1. "Why don't you study Maths at evening class?" she said to him. - She suggested ... 2. "Let's finish the meeting on time," he said to them. - He proposed ... "Take the prisoner below deck and tie him up!" - shouted the captain. - The captain commanded ... 3. "If I were you, I'd have the beef," said the waiter. - The waiter recommended ... 4. "The minutes of the meeting must be observed," said the chairperson. - The chairperson insisted ..5. The contract must be signed by all parties. - I arranged ...6. The candidates must have a thorough medical examination. - The doctor recommended... . "I would like a full inquiry to take place," said the Prime Minister. - The Prime Minister requested ... 7. I don't remember who was the first to suggest my taking this theme for the research. 8. doctor strongly recommended the woman to the prescribed diet. 9. The majority insisted on the matter being turned over to a special committee. 10. We were very anxious for him to come 60 for the celebration in time. 11. The chairman proposed the question to be included. 12. She suggested going for a walk. 13. The physician demanded the patient's immediate taking to hospital. 14. The teacher strongly advised the students' correction work.

Homework 2. Open the brackets

1. He suggests that I (to try) something else. 2. He only requested that he (to allow) to see the heads of the departments. 3. Doris requires of a man that he (to be) clever. 4. Brady proposed that they (to walk) down to the sea hill. 5. They decided that Laura (to have) the food that had been ordered. 6. Charles insisted that we (to keep) it in secret. 7. She soon demanded that the work (to finish) in time. 8. I've made up my mind that Meg (to send for). 9. I thought that I (to get) over it. 10. He had never suggested that I (to visit) them. 11. Frank insisted that I (to be) also present. 12. The teacher recommended that the students (to work) in the library. 13. She insists that the margins /to be/ on the left side of the page. 14. She promised to arrange that mother /to come and sit/ with the baby.

Additional exercise 1. Match the expressions in Subjunctive I with their explanation

1. God bless you! Будь здоров!	a) You hope very much that something will not happen.
2. So be it! Хай так і буде!	b) You hope somebody will be safe and happy, especially when you are saying good-bye.
3. Heaven (God) forbid! Не дай боже!	c) Even though you accept that something is true, it doesn't change anything.

4. Long live the Queen!	d) You don't like or agree with something but you accept it.
5. Success attend you!	e) You wish someone success.
6. Far be it from me to conceal the truth. Я далекий від того, щоб...	f) The statement that follows is enough to explain what you mean.
7. Truth be told...	g) = whatever happens
8. Suffice it to say...Досить сказати	h) You hope what someone has said will never happen.
9. Be that as it may...як би там не було	i) You wish somebody happiness.
10. Come what may...будь що буде	j) You wish yourself a happy journey when you are about to leave.
11. Perish the thought! І не думай!	k) You're annoyed with somebody's ideas.
12. May you be happy!	l) You show support for the Queen.
13. Be ours a happy journey!	m) = to tell the truth
14. Confound you ideas! До біса...	n) You deny hiding the truth from somebody.

Additional exercise 2. Write a chain story by adding 8-10 sentences to the beginning of the story

He is at school now. - If he were not at school now, he would be in bed. If he were still in bed now, he'd oversleep and feel groggy when he woke up. If he felt groggy when he woke up, he'd drink 3 cups of coffee. If you drank...

Revision test

1. It is necessary that he... here.

A should come B had already come C would come D is coming

2. It is impossible that such a design . . .

A would be adopted B will be adopted C should be adopted D are adopted

3. They demanded that the living conditions ...

A would be improved B had been improved C be improved D must be improved

4. We suggest that you . . tomorrow

- A have started B will start C would start D should start
5. It is desirable that he ...
A come back B comes back C will come back. D would come back
6. I insist that you ...a doctor.
A should consult B would consult C will be consulting D are consulted
7. It is necessary that he... at the meeting.
A will be present B be present C is present D has been present
8. I suggest that you ... the letter at once.
A will answer B are answering. C should answer D will be answering
9. I wish he ... with us now.
A has been B were C is D should be
10. The engineer ordered that those devices ...
A will be tested B are tested. C are being tested D be tested

THEME 2.3. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Revision

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=qhqx6wmQf04&ab_channel=LearnEnglishwithPapaTeachMe

Theoretical Background. Grammar Way, pp.131-133. Підручник Л.Г.Верби, сс.65-67

Exercise 1. Complete the following sentences using the Oblique Moods

1. The boys were afraid ... (lest) 2. She had a fear ... (lest) 3. Sam feared lest ... (that) 4. The mother was uneasy lest ... (that) 5. The doctor worried lest ... (that) 6. The only thing that made her lie awake at night was a certain fear that ... (lest) 7. She had no fear that... (lest) 8. Have you ever felt a fear that... (lest) 9. It was a constant fear that... (lest) 10. She expressed no fear that... (lest) 11. The only worry she has is that... (lest) 12. There was anxiety lest... (that) 13. The fear lest... (that) was enough to dampen her spirit. 14. His only fear was that... (lest) 15. Your only fear will be lest... (that) 16 Her constant worry is that ... (lest) 17. You will be troubled by a recurrent worry lest... (that)

Exercise 2. Pattern: He suggests that we should do it. – His suggestion is that we should do it. He expresses the suggestion that we should do it

1. I suggest that we should not take any steps until we hear from her. 2. He will only suggest that measures be taken without specifying which. 3. He ordered that the women and children should be taken care of first. 4. They recommended that nothing should be done without the doctor's advice. 5. She only wished that people should leave her alone. 6. The chairman moved that the question be struck off the agenda. 7. They arranged that I should spend the summer at Aunt Mary's. 8. They will demand that the agreement be considered void. 9. The doctor strongly recommended that the children should be given cod-liver oil all through the winter and early spring.

Exercise 3. Write a sentence with if for each situation

1. I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat anything.
2. The accident happened because the driver in front stopped so suddenly.
3. I didn't know that George had to get up early, so I didn't wake him up.
4. I was able to buy the car only because Jim lent me the money.
5. Margaret wasn't injured in the crash because she was wearing a seat belt.
6. You didn't have any breakfast - that's why you're hungry now.
7. I didn't get a taxi because I didn't have any money on me.

Exercise 4. Put the verbs in brackets into a correct form

1. Peter: Wouldn't it be better (ask) Tom (leave) his camera at home? Jack: It would be no good (ask) Tom (do) that. It would be like (ask) a woman (travel)

without a handbag.

2. I've got the loaf; now I'm looking for a breadknife (cut) it with. – I saw Paul (sharpen) a pencil with the breadknife a minute ago.

3. We stopped once (buy) petrol and then we stopped again (ask) someone the way.

4. When I caught them (cheat) me, I stopped (buy) petrol there and started (deal) with your garage instead.

5. Do you feel like (dine) out or would you rather (have) dinner at home? – I'd like (go) out. I always enjoy (have) dinner in a restaurant.

6. Your hair needs (cut). You'd better (have) it done tomorrow, unless you'd like me (have) a go at it for you.

7. I tried (convince) him that I was perfectly capable of (manage) on my own, but he insisted on (help) me.

8. Jack: I don't mind (travel) by bus, but I hate (stand) in queues. Tom: I don't care for (queue) either; and you waste so much time (wait) for buses. I think it's better (go) by tube, or taxi.

9. He took to (follow) me about and (criticize) my work till I threatened (hit) him.

10. I have (stay) here; I'm on duty. But you needn't (wait); you're free (go) whenever you like.

11. In Animal Farm the old pig urged the animals (rebel) against man but he warned them (not adopt) man's habits.

12. There is no point in (arrive) half an hour early. We'd only have (wait). – I don't mind (wait). It's better (be) too early than too late.

13. I always try (come) in quietly but they always hear me (go) upstairs. It's impossible (climb) an old wooden staircase at night without (make) a noise.

14. If you agree (work) for me I'll see about (get) you a work permit.

15. We'd better (start) early. We don't want (risk) (get) caught in a traffic jam.

16. He suggested (call) a meeting and (let) the workers (decide) the matter themselves.

17. Jack: Don't forget (take) a hacksaw with you. Ann: What's a hacksaw? And why should I (take) one with me? Jack: It's a tool for (cut) metal. You see, Tom is bound (get) into trouble for (take) photographs of the wrong things, and you'll be arrested with him. With a hacksaw you'll be able (saw) through the bars of your cell and (escape).

Video

[https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=-vefS0B1DIY&ab_channel=Adam
%E2%80%99sEnglishLessons%C2%B7engVid](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=-vefS0B1DIY&ab_channel=Adam%E2%80%99sEnglishLessons%C2%B7engVid)

Exercise 1. Write sentences beginning I wish ...

1. I don't know many people (and I'm lonely).

2. I don't have a key (and I need one).

3. Ann isn't here (and I need to see her).
4. It's cold (and I hate cold weather).
5. I live in a big city (and I don't like it).
6. I can't go to the party (and I'd like to).
7. I have to work tomorrow (but I'd like to stay in bed).
8. I don't know anything about cars (and my car has just broken down).
9. I'm not lying on a beautiful sunny beach (and that's a pity).

Exercise 2. Imagine that you are in these situations. For each situation, write a sentence with I wish ...

1. You've eaten too much and now you feel sick. You say: I wish I hadn't eaten so much.
2. There was a job advertised in the newspaper. You decided not to apply for it. Now you think that your decision was wrong.
3. When you were younger, you didn't learn to play a musical instrument. Now you regret this.
4. You've painted the gate red. Now you think that it doesn't look very nice.
5. You are walking in the country. You would like to take some photographs but you didn't bring your camera.
6. You have some unexpected guests. They didn't tell you they were coming. You are very busy and you are not prepared for them.

Exercise 3. What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with I wish ... would ...

1. It's raining. You want to go out, but not in the rain. You say: I wish it would stop raining.
2. You're waiting for John. He's late and you're getting impatient.
3. You can hear a baby crying and you're trying to study.
4. You're looking for a job - so far without success. Nobody will give you a job.
5. Brian has been wearing the same clothes for years. You think he needs some new clothes.
6. Your friend drives very fast. You don't like this.

Exercise 4. Are these sentences right or wrong? Correct the ones that are wrong

1. I wish Sarah would be here now.
2. I wish you would listen to me.
3. I wish I would have more money.
4. I wish it wouldn't be so cold today.
5. I wish the weather would change.
6. I wish you wouldn't complain all the time.
7. I wish everything wouldn't be so expensive.

Exercise 5. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense

- 1 A: I wish I ... (speak) another language. S: It's never too late. You could take an evening course.
- 2 A: If only I (train) harder for the race. S: Well, you can compete again next year.
- 3 A: I wish I ... (not/give) George the money. S: Don't worry; he will pay you back soon.
- 4 A: I wish Sill ... (tell) us why he's so sad today. S: Maybe he just needs some time alone.
- 5 A: I wish you (take off) your dirty boots at the door. S: Sorry. I'll try to remember next time.
- 6 A: I wish I ... (wear) my heavy coat. I feel really cold now. S: It's not your fault. The weather forecast said it would be sunny.
- 7 A: If only my children... (be) more helpful with the housework. S: You should give them some chores to do.
- 8 A: If only it. .. (stop) snowing. S: I know. It makes driving very dangerous. She wishes she could sing like a bird. = it's a pity she cannot sing

Exercise 6. Insert Articles

1. Can you play ... musical instrument? I play ... piano and ... guitar.
2. Do you own ... guitar? Someone left ... old guitar sitting on the table.
3. These days, ... apples are really expensive. And ... lettuce costs a fortune! Why do ... fruit and ... vegetables cost so much?
4. Diana thinks ... creativity and ... innovation are something you can't teach, but I disagree.
5. Dr. Preston told me that ... pronghorn is the fastest land animal on the planet, but I think he was wrong. I'm pretty sure ... cheetahs are faster
6. The environmentalist argued that ... clean air should be .. universal "human right". He discussed the effects of ... pollution on ... human health.
7. Cheryl thinks ... cats make the best pets, but I think ... dogs have more personality.
8. The documentary discussed whether ... cat was domesticated in ancient Egypt or in an earlier period. I have ... cat, so I was very interested in the program.
9. I wish I could play...violin. I love string instruments like...violins.
10. I read that ... bristlecone pine is the longest living tree in the world. And I also read ... sequoias are the biggest trees in the world. Amazingly, both trees are found in California!

Exercise 7. Insert Prepositions

1. The guitar John Lennon was playing when he first met...Paul McCartney could fetch up to £100,000 when it is put... auction by Sotheby's in London next month.

2. The Gallotone "Champion" acoustic guitar is the earliest Beatles guitar to be offered...auction.
3. The 17-year-old John Lennon was playing it while leading his band the Quarry Men...a church fete in 1957.
4. Sotheby's Rock 'n' Roll specialist Stephen Maycock said: "This is the most important and significant piece of early Beatles memorabilia to come...the market."
5. The cherry-coloured Dutch-made guitar has been fully restored and bears the "Champion" logo. It also bears a brass plaque...the inscription "Remember you'll never earn your living by it".
6. It refers...a remark that Lennon's Aunt Mimi is thought to have made out of exasperation at the number of hours the young Lennon spent practising on the guitar rather...studying.
7. But, her nephew was out to prove her anxiety wrong and if he had not been playing his guitar once again at the St Peter's church fete...Woolton, Merseyside he might not have had that fateful encounter.
8. A black and white photo...the afternoon shows Lennon standing at the front...the stage playing the Dutch-made guitar. Among the crowd of spectators was the teenage McCartney.
9. The two were introduced later...the day as the Quarry Men set up...an evening session in the church hall.
10. McCartney was impressed with Lennon's ability to play the guitar and remember lyrics from well-known rock 'n' roll songs. A former member of the Quarry Men recalled that Lennon bought the instrument...mail order a month or so earlier, for only £10.
11. Forty-two years on, the guitar, which is being sold...with Lennon's typewriter and records...his early collection, is expected to sell ... £100,000 at the Rock 'n' Roll Memorabilia Sale at the Hard Rock Cafe.
12. In September 1994, a tape recording of John Lennon singing and playing the guitar...the Quarry Men at the fete was bought EMI Records for £78,500 at the annual sale.

Exercise 8. Use correct tenses

1. I was exhausted at the end of the exam. I (write) for over two hours.
2. When thieves stole my favourite leather jacket, I was really upset. I (have) it for over ten years.
3. Please step out of the car, Mr. Jones. Do you realise you (drive) at over 90mph?
4. We didn't really want to go and see the musical again. We (already see) it twice - so we said "no" and we went to a restaurant instead!
5. I arrived over an hour late to the office and everyone was working. Actually, they (work) for over two hours on the new project and I felt really guilty.
6. The kitchen was full of steam when we arrived. Joan was in the kitchen and she (cook) a huge meal for everyone at the party.

7. It was a bit embarrassing to arrive at their house and find Mary looking so sad. I think she (cry) before we got there.
8. No-one even noticed when I got home. They(all watch) the big game on TV.

Exercise 9. Choose correct words

1. I need to have those pipes unblocked.	locksmith
2. I need to have the lawn mown.	gardener
3. I need to have a new light switch added.	roofer
4. I need to have those walls made smooth	electrician
5. I need to have a treehouse made.	carpenter
6. I need to have the doors made more secure.	bricklayer
7. I need to have those leaks fixed.	plasterer
8. I need to have a new wall built.	plumber

Homework 1. Look at each situation and decide if it describes a past or a present situation. Then write a sentence using "wish"

1. I am not very tall.
2. I didn't learn English when I was younger.
3. I can't speak perfect English.
4. My hair isn't blonde.
5. My tennis serve is useless.
6. I didn't sleep very well last night.
7. I got really badly sunburnt on the beach yesterday because I forgot my sun-cream.
8. My nose is too big.
9. I'm not the best student in the class.
10. I didn't go out with my friends to the disco-bar last night.
11. My neighborhood is terribly noisy at night.
12. I have to get up early every day.
13. I wish I ... drunk and kissed Samantha. (get NEGATIVE)
14. I wish it ... so much. The garden's turned to mud. (rain NEGATIVE)
15. If only I ... there, I wouldn't have got a fine. (park NEGATIVE)
16. If only I ... more time for my hobbies. (have)
17. I wish it ... more often in Valencia. (rain)
18. I wish I ... to go to your nephew's wedding. (have NEGATIVE)
19. I wish you ... so much. You're a complete idiot when you're drunk. (drink)
20. If only it The garden's as dry as a bone. (rain)
21. I wish Samantha ...her hair more often. It looks so greasy all the time. (wash)

22. I wish you ... so horrible to your brother. He's a really nice bloke. (be NEGATIVE)
23. I wish the council ... that beautiful old house. It was part of the town's heritage. (demolish NEGATIVE)
24. If only I ... the money to go to Jon's wedding in the States. (have)
25. I wish I ... her she'd put on weight. She hates me now. (tell NEGATIVE)

Homework 2. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form

- 1 Suppose you ... (meet) a famous actor, would you ask him for his autograph?
2. I wish I... (ask) my parents' advice before I decided to buy the house. 3. Alan says he would rather ... (prepare) the dinner by himself. 4. I'd rather you ... (send) me a letter than an email. 5. Supposing I needed to borrow some money... (you/lend) some to me? 6. She isn't a trained ballerina but she dances as if she... (be). 7. If you hadn't left early, you... (hear) Tom playing the guitar. 8. I wish Alan... (not/change) jobs; it's not the same here without him.

Make necessary transformations

1. He'll pay you back. He'll get some money. (if I) 2. It is advisable for everyone to consult a doctor before going to the South. (It is advisable) 3. I didn't see places of interest abroad. I wasn't away on holiday. (If) 4. "Why don't you study Maths at evening class?" she said to him. – (She suggested) 5. He looked at me so that it seemed he found it hard to believe. (as if) 6. You went to bed very late last night and you are feeling tired now. (If) 7. I suggest discussing the plan at the conference. (I suggest) 8. She regrets now not having told the truth then. (I wish) 9. The weather was nasty but we enjoyed the trip. (Even if) 10. The children may fall ill. I worry about it. (I worry)

Additional exercise 1. Underline the correct tense

1. Supposing you had seen/had been seen taking the money, what would you have done? 2. Paul acted as if he owns/owned the company. 3. I wish I went/had gone to the concert last night. 4. It's high time you learnt/had learnt how to cook. 5. Suppose you saw/had seen someone getting mugged, what would you do? 6. It's about time we replaced/had replaced the old printer. 7. I'd rather you hadn't told/didn't tell everyone my secret at the party last night. 8. I would have prepared some sandwiches if I knew/had known you were visiting. 9. I'd rather you didn't turn on/hadn't turned on the TV when I'm reading. 10. If only I didn't break/hadn't broken my dad's camera. He's very angry with me.

Additional exercise 2. Complete the following sentences

1. I advise you to apply for the job if I (be) you 2. You have to be rich to afford a car like that (can) Only ... you afford a car like that. 3 It's a pity I didn't attend the football match yesterday. (wish) I ... the football match yesterday. 4. He doesn't want to annoy his sister while she is studying. rather He ... his sister

while she is studying. 5. Steve woke up late because he didn't set his alarm clock. (have) Steve..... late if he had set his alarm clock.

Revision test

1. Plants die if you...them.

A won't water B don't water C wouldn't water D didn't water

2. If I had seen her, I ...to her. But I didn't see her.

A spoke B would speak C speak D would have spoken

3. I ... the same if I were in your shoes.

A would do B will do C would have done D do

4. We ... good seats if we arrive late.

A don't get B didn't get C won't get D get

5. If we ... out of money, we'll get a job.

A will run B would run C run D ran

6. If Columbus ... such a passion for travelling, he wouldn't have discovered America in 1492.

A hadn't B wouldn't have had C hadn't had D hasn't

7. I fear lest he...his money.

A should lose B would lose C had lost D lost

8.He ordered that the contract should be read aloud.

A a hypothetical action, expressing order B a completed action with the meaning of the present perfect C an unreal action referring to the past D a hypothetical action referring to the past

9. Is it possible that they...such an expensive car soon?

A should buy B had bought C bought D would buy

THEME 2.4. ADJECTIVE. ADVERB. DEGREES OF COMPARISON

Revision

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Ke9aVTK2x7E&ab_channel=Grammarsaurus

Theoretical background. In Use, Units 98-100, 104-107; Grammar Way, pp.42-50. Round Up 6, p.49-68; Підручник Л.Г.Верби, сс.154-157

Exercise 1. Paraphrase the following sentences so as to use the Subjunctive Mood after the verb to wish

1. He was sorry he couldn't accept the invitation to join us.
2. It's a pity you were absent yesterday.
3. I'd like him to be more undemanding.
4. They are sorry they didn't invite her.
5. He was disappointed that he would not be able to see the film.
6. I regret now not having told her all the truth.
7. What a pity you can't swim.
8. I'm awfully sorry I kept you waiting so long.
9. It's a pity I couldn't go to the theatre with you.
10. I'm very sorry that I have disturbed you.
11. It's a pity you are leaving so soon.
12. I'd like to see the film again.
13. It was a pity we could not see the stage well.
14. They were sorry they hadn't taken a taxi and had missed their train.

Exercise 2. Insert a suitable Verb

1. Would you be happy if you...a home by the lake?
2. If I...gotten up so early, I would have been late.
3. Many people...be healthier if they exercised more.
4. If I...gone to the meeting, I wouldn't have seen Betty.
5. What would you do if you...in my shoes?
6. I would help you if I....
7. He...have lost his job if he had done better work.
8. I wish you...so impatient.
9. I...have believed it if I hadn't seen it myself.
10. I wish I...have so much work to do.

Exercise 3. Change into reported speech

1. Julie said, "My birthday is on Friday." Julie said ...
2. John said, "I saw that movie once before." John said he ...
3. My friend said, "I'll come with you." My friend said ...
4. The veterinarian said, "I'll give the cat an injection." The veterinarian said ...
5. Sally asked, "Can I help you plan the party?" Sally asked if ...

6. Rachel said, "I'm baking a cake for the party." Rachel told me ...
7. The doctor said, "You need to have an operation." The doctor told me ...
8. She said, "I've been cleaning the house all morning." She said she ...
9. She asked, "Do you want some lemonade?" She asked if we ...
10. Tom asked, "Have you ever been on a sailboat before?" Tom asked if we ...

Exercise 4. Re-order these words to make sentences that use the causative

1. place / . / they / to / same / the / cut / their / you / go / hair / in / had
2. you / . / it's / have / should / your / checked / you / safe / wiring / know / electric / so
3. repaired / . / get / that / window / have / to / we / broken
4. French / . / by / they're / old / a / having / taught / daughter / woman / their
5. expert / by / trained / we're / to / dog / have / an / . / going / our
6. get / coming / hair / your / ! / school / cut / before / tomorrow / to
7. these / I / by / shortened / trousers / few / a / have / need / to / centimetres / .
8. someone / had / my / engine / know / by / sister / at / the / looked / I / .

Exercise 5. Put the verbs in brackets into a correct form (Gerund, Participle or Infinitive). Sometimes more than one form is possible

1. I was lonely at first, ' the old man admitted, but after a time I got used to (live) alone and even got (like) it.'
2. Before trains were invented people used (travel) on horseback or in stage coaches. It used (take) a stage coach three days (go) from London to Bath.
3. I meant (buy) an evening paper but I didn't see anyone (sell) them.
4. Tom: I want (catch) the 7 a.m. train tomorrow. Ann: But that means (get) up at 6.00; and you're not very good at (get) up early, are you?
5. He accepted the cut in salary without complaint because he was afraid (complain). He was afraid of (lose) his job.
6. She remembers part of her childhood quite clearly. She remembers (go) to school for the first time and (be) frightened and (put) her finger in her mouth. And she remembers her teacher (tell) her (take) it out.
7. Did you remember (lock) the car? – No, I didn't. I'd better (go) back and (do) it now.
8. No, I didn't move the bomb. I was afraid (touch) it; I was afraid of (be) blown to pieces!
9. Next time we go (house-hunt), remember (ask) the agent for clear directions. I wasted hours (look) for the last house.
10. Tom: Let's (go) for a swim. Ann: I'm not particularly keen on (swim). What about (go) for a drive instead?
11. The hunters expected (be paid) by the foot for the snakes they caught. This meant (take) the snakes out of the sack and (measure) them. They seemed (expect) me (do) it; but I wasn't particularly anxious (be) the first (die) of snakebite.
12. After (spend) two days (argue) about where to go for their holiday they decided (not go) anywhere.
13. He is talking about (give) up his job and (go) (live) in the country.
14. I was just about (leave) the office when the phone rang. It was my wife; she wanted me (call) at the butcher's on my way home.
15. He said, I'm terribly sorry to (keep) you (wait).'
- I said, It doesn't matter at all,' but he went on (apologize) for nearly

five minutes! 16. The lecturer began by (tell) us where the island was, and went on (talk) about its history. 17. My father thinks I am not capable of (earn) my own living, but I mean (show) him that he is wrong. 18. Tom: I can't get my car (start) on cold mornings. Jack: Have you tried (fill) the radiator with hot water? That sometimes helps. 19. Did he manage (carry) the trunk upstairs? – No, he didn't. He isn't strong enough (move) it, let alone (carry) it upstairs.

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Ke9aVTK2x7E&ab_channel=Grammarsaurus

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=pJLJ8eE5u6Q&ab_channel=Anglo-Link

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=mHNQ8s2pnX8&ab_channel=EnglishwithLucy

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UL-qh3-dxlo&ab_channel=EnglishwithAlex%C2%B7engVidEnglishClasses

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1N1MpESNE6o&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=0HPKwhngB-U&ab_channel=EnglishwithRonnie%C2%B7EnglishLessons4UwithengVid

Exercise 1. Complete the sentences using a comparative form (older/more important etc.)

1. It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere quieter?
2. This coffee is very weak. I like it a bit ...
3. The hotel was surprisingly big. I expected it to be ...
4. The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be ...
5. The weather is too cold in this country. I'd like to live somewhere ...
6. My job is a bit boring sometimes. I'd like to do something ...
7. I was surprised how easy it was to use the computer. I thought it would be ...
8. Your work isn't very good. I'm sure you can do ...
9. Don't worry. The situation isn't so bad. It could be ...
10. I was surprised we got here so quickly. I expected the journey to take ...
11. You're talking very loudly. Can you speak a bit ...
12. You hardly ever phone me. Why don't you phone me ...
13. You're standing too near the camera. Can you move a bit ... away?
14. You were a bit depressed yesterday but you look ... today.

Exercise 2. Complete the sentences. Each time use the comparative form of one of the words in the list. Use **than** where necessary

big crowded early easily high important interested peaceful reliable serious simple thinner

1. I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed earlier than usual.
2. I'd like to have a more reliable car. The one I've got keeps breaking down.

3. Unfortunately her illness was ... we thought at first.
4. You look ... Have you lost weight?
5. I want a ... flat. We don't have enough space here.
6. He doesn't study very hard. He's ... in having a good time.
7. Health and happiness are ... money.
8. The instructions were very complicated. They could have been ...
9. There were a lot of people on the bus. It was ... usual.
10. I like living in the countryside. It's ... living in a town.
11. You'll find your way around the town ... if you have a good map.
12. In some parts of the country, prices are ... in others.

Exercise 3. Read the situations and complete the sentences. Use a comparative form (~er or more ...)

Yesterday the temperature was nine degrees. Today it's only six degrees. It's colder today than it was yesterday.

1. I'm quite tall but you are taller. I'm not as tall as you.
2. My salary is high but yours is higher. My salary isn't ...
3. You know a bit about cars but I know more. You don't ...
4. It's still cold but it was colder yesterday. It isn't ...
5. I still feel a bit tired but I felt a lot more tired yesterday. I don't ...
6. They've lived here for quite a long time but we've lived here longer. They haven't ...
7. I was a bit nervous before the interview but usually I'm a lot more nervous. I wasn't ...

Exercise 4. Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences. Use much/a bit etc. + a comparative form. Use than where necessary

1. Her illness was much more serious than we thought at first. (much/serious)
2. This bag is too small. I need something ... (much/big)
3. I'm afraid the problem is ... it seems. (much/complicated)
4. You looked depressed this morning but you look ...now. (a bit/happy)
5. I enjoyed our visit to the museum. It was ... I expected. (far/interesting)
6. You're driving too fast. Could you drive ...? (a bit/slowly)
7. It's ... to learn a foreign language in the country where it is spoken. (a lot/easy)
8. I thought she was younger than me but in fact she's ... (slightly/old)

ОРФОВІКПОМФ

Оцінка розмір форма вік колір походження матеріал функція

A nice tiny triangle modern silvery French plastic dressing table

Exercise 5. Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct position

1. a beautiful table (wooden/round) ...a beautiful round wooden table.

2. an unusual ring (gold) ...
3. a new pullover (nice) ...
4. a new pullover (green) ...
5. a old house (beautiful) ...
6. black gloves (leather) ...
7. an American film (old) ...
8. an oval face (pretty) ...
9. big clouds (black) ...
10. a sunny day (lovely) ...
11. a wide avenue (long) ...
12. a metal box (black/small) ...
13. a big cat (fat/black) ...
14. a little village (old/lovely) ...
15. long hair (black/beautiful) ...
16. an old painting (interesting/French) ...
17. an enormous umbrella (red/yellow) ...

MPT manner place time

The baby slept quietly in its cot the whole night.

Verb of motion PMT place manner time

He goes to work by bus every day.

Exercise 6. Complete each sentence with a verb (in the correct form) and an adjective from the boxes

verb: feel smell look seem smell sound taste

adjective: awful fine nice interesting upset wet

1. Ann seemed upset this morning. Do you know what was wrong?
2. I can't eat this. I've just tried it and it ...
3. I wasn't very well yesterday but I ... today.
4. What beautiful flowers! They ... too.
5. You ... Have you been out in the rain?
6. Jim was telling me about his new job. It ... quite ..., much better than his old job.

Exercise 7. Choose the correct word

1. This tea tastes a bit ... (strange/strangely)
2. I always feel ... when the sun is shining. (happy/happily)
3. The children were playing ... in the garden. (happy/happily)
4. The man became ... when the manager of the restaurant asked him to leave. (violent/violently)
5. You look ... Are you all right? (terrible/terribly)
6. There s no point in doing a job if you don't do it ... (proper/properly)

Exercise 8. Use the correct suffix to complete the adjectives in these sentences -ful -less -able -ive -ic -ly -ible

1. Your brother was very *coward*. He ran away immediately.
2. That snake looks dangerous, but it's totally *harm*. Don't worry!
3. To work as an acrobat in the circus, you have to be very *flex*.
4. Oh, look at those *ador* puppies. Can I have one?
5. He's always running about, very *athlet*. He'll be in the Olympics one day.
6. What a *beauti* painting. Do you know who painted it?
7. We need a full and *truth* account of what happened, Jennifer. Tell us everything.
8. These animals sleep during the day and are then *act* during the night.
9. It must be very *lone* living on this mountain without any neighbors.
10. Betty is a very *creat* little girl, always painting or drawing or something like that.

Exercise 9. Read through this text about Prague and decide on the best answer for each blank. There are three possibilities for each one. Write the correct letter in each box.

1. a. more b. most c. very
2. a. bigger b. more c. many
3. a. smaller b. more small c. smallest
4. a. very b. more c. such
5. a. very cheap b. more cheap c. cheaper
6. a. every b. most c. more
7. a. better b. more good c. most good
8. a. few b. much c. little
9. a. very cheaper b. little more expensive c. little cheaper

Prague is one of the (1) popular tourist destinations in Europe. After all the political changes of the early 1990's, the capital of the Czech Republic began to take advantage of its beautiful cultural and architectural heritage to attract (2) tourists than ever before.

Prague is a (3) city than many people imagine and it is (4) easy to move around this wonderful city on foot. Public transport is (5) in Prague than in (6) other European cities but it is often (7) to walk, enabling you to appreciate marvellous buildings you might have missed if you had been sitting on a bus or a tram. (8) people leave the city of Prague without commenting on the superb food and drink available here. Eating out here is a (9) than it used to be but you can still have a three course meal for around \$15 without any problems.

Exercise 10. Insert Articles

1. We donated to a charity which provides assistance to ...elderly and ...poor.
2. Mr. Johnson is ...elderly and ...poor, so the government provides him with financial assistance.

3. There is still some disagreement over the new free trade treaty. According to news reports, the British and ...Dutch supported the treaty, but other nations were undecided.
4. Betty loves ...Dutch; it's one of her favorite languages.
5. Have you ever met ...Mr. Henderson? He runs a magazine which caters to ...very wealthy.
6. Have you ever met ...Wilson's? They are both ...very wealthy.
7. The school teaches ... blind people to read.
8. Louis Braille created a writing system to allow ...blind to read.
9. Have you ever heard of ...Maasai? They are a famous tribe in Kenya.
10. Did you know that ...Austrians speak ...German?

Exercise 11. Insert Prepositions

- 1 It's a very nice room. It is the nicest room in the hotel.
2. It's a very cheap restaurant. It's ... the town.
3. It was a very happy day. It was ... my life.
4. She's a very intelligent student. She ... the class.
5. It's a very valuable painting. It ... the gallery.
6. Spring is a very busy time for me. It ... the year.
- 7 It's a very nice room. It ...is one of the nicest rooms ... the hotel.
8. He's a very rich man. He's one ... the world.
9. It's a very old castle. It ... Britain.
10. She's a very good player. She ... the team.
11. It was a very bad experience. It ... my life.
12. He's a very dangerous criminal. He ... the country.

Exercise 12. Use correct tenses

1. By 8.30 am, he...at the airport. (arrive).
2. At 9am, he ... his plane (wait).
3. At 9.30 am, he ... for Paris (leave).
4. At 10 am, he ... to Paris (fly).
5. At 11.10 am, he ... (arrive) in Paris.
6. At 1.30 pm, the meeting ... (start).
7. At 7.50 pm, he ... his dinner (eat).
8. At 10.15 pm, he ... (leave) the restaurant.
9. At midnight, he ... (sleep).

Exercise 13. For each sentence, choose between *can't*, *might* or *must* to fill each space

1. Your mother ... be a great cook. You are always so keen to get back home to eat!
2. I don't know why I am so tired these days. I ... be working too hard. Or maybe I am not sleeping too well.

3. Do you know where Carl is? He ... be out - his car keys are on the table.
4. You seem to know everything about the theatre. You ... go every week.
5. To give the promotion to Harold was silly. He ... know much about this company after only a year working here.
6. Go and look in the kitchen for your gloves. They ... be in there.
7. Oh, the phone is ringing. Answer it. It ... be Kate. She always rings at this time.
8. Dan has been drinking that whiskey since early this afternoon. He .. be totally drunk by now.
9. That couple ... think much of this film. They're leaving already - after only 20 minutes!
10. That's the second new car they have bought this year. They ... be very rich!

Exercise 14. Correct mistakes if any

1. I'm not used to having to study so hard.
2. Get used to working hard quickly or you'll be looking for another job.
3. Didn't your uncle use to work in that factory that burnt down yesterday?
4. It takes a long time to get used to live in another country.
5. I don't like eating pizza but I used to.
6. I can't be used to living in such a small apartment. My house was huge!
7. Are you getting used to having a small baby in the house?
8. The politicians said they didn't used to working in the new parliament building yet.

Homework 1. Use correct forms

1. It's becoming harder and harder to find a job. (hard)
2. That hole in your pullover is getting ... (big)
3. My bags seemed to get ... as I carried them. (heavy)
4. As I waited for my interview, I became ... (nervous)
5. As the day went on, the weather got ... (bad)
6. Travelling is becoming ... (expensive)
7. Since she has been in Britain, her English has got ... (good)
8. As the conversation went on, he became ... (talkative)
9. I didn't really like him when we first met. But the more I got to know him, ... (like)
10. If you're in business, you want to make a profit. The more goods you sell, ... (profit)
11. It's hard to concentrate when you're tired. The more tired you are, ... (hard)
12. She had to wait a very long time. The longer she waited, ... (impatient/become)
13. My (older/elder) brother is a pilot.
14. I'm surprised Diane is only 25. I thought she was (older/elder).
15. Ann's younger sister is still at school. Her (older/elder) sister is a nurse.

16. Martin is (older/elder) than his brother.

Homework 2. Fill in: the + adjective or the + adjective + people.

The government is cutting back on benefits for ... (unemployed) 2. A nurse is a person who looks after.... (sick) 3. Some of in the neighbourhood remember when it was bombed during the war. (old) 4. A new hostel is to be opened for ... (homeless) 5. Mother Teresa worked to help of Calcutta. (poor) 6. The survey showed that ... control 90% of the country's wealth. (rich)

Put the adjectives in brackets into the comparative or superlative form, adding any necessary words

1. A: Did you enjoy the film? B: Not at all. It was (bad) film I've ever seen. 2. A: Craig is very intelligent. B: Yes. He's (clever) student in our class. 3. A: How much did you pay for that woollen hat? B: £3. It was (cheap) one I could find. 4. A: Did you enjoy your holiday? B: Oh, yes. It was ... (good) holiday I've had in years. 5. A: Did you like the red shirt you tried on? B: Yes, but it was far (expensive) the white one. 6. A: Whales are (big) dolphins. B: I know. They are huge! 7. A: What time is (early) train to Oxford in the morning? B: The first train leaves at 6 am.

Additional exercise 1. Underline the correct item, then explain the difference in meaning

1. Simon told everyone he would pass the exam easy / easily, so he was deep / deeply embarrassed when he came last / lastly in the class with 20%. 2. "I sure / surely am happy to meet you," said the reporter to the high / highly respected singer. "You're pretty / prettily famous around here, you know." 3. When he was almost full / fully recovered from his illness, the doctor told him to take it easy / easily and said that he would be able to return to work short / shortly. 4. As he was found near / nearly the scene of the robbery with a gun in his hand, it is hard / hardly surprising that he was arrested. It turned out that he had been wrong / wrongly accused. 5. Sure / Surely you can't have answered every question wrong / wrongly. 6. Rob was a very poor archer. His first arrow fell short / shortly of the target, his second flew about 10 metres wide / widely and the third flew high / highly into the air and landed behind him. 7. Although he arrived an hour late / lately, he started work immediately and tried hard / hardly to make up for lost time. 8. Lately / Late, she has been getting all her clothes freely / free from the fashion company, so I can't understand why she dresses so badly / bad. 9. It is wide / widely believed that there is a bus that goes direct / directly from here to the airport, but it's not true. 10. Last / Lastly, I would like to encourage you to free / freely donate money to the cause to find a cure for cancer.

Revision test

1. The ... you study for these exams, the ... you will do

- hard – better
 harder - more successfully
 much – better
 more - good
2. She doesn't really like vodka, so the ... a bottle you find, the ... it will be for us!
 small – cheaper
 smaller – cheap
 smaller – good
 smaller - cheaper
3. My neighbor is driving me mad! It seems that the ... it is at night, the ... he plays his music!
 later - more loud
 late – louder
 later – louder
 more late - loud
4. He spent a year in India and loves spicy food. The ... the food is, the ... he likes it.
 hotter – more
 hot – much
 hotter – much
 hot - more
5. Of course you can come to the party! The ... the ...
 more – merrier
 more – good
 many - better
6. She will be really angry about that vase being broken! The ... she knows about it, the ...
 more – better
 less – better
 worse – worse
 worse - better
7. He has 6 large dogs to protect his house. The ... the dog, the ... he feels.
 big – safer
 bigger – safer
 bigger – safer
 more big - more safe
8. Earning money has always been the thing that pleases him most. The ... he becomes, the ... he is.
 more rich – happier
 richer – happier
 richer - happier

9. You must drive slower in built up areas. The ... you drive in the city, the ... it is that you will have an accident.

faster – probable

quicker – probably

faster - more probably

quicker - more probable

THEME 2.5. NOUN. PLURALS. POSSESSIVES

Revision

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=FwuV64j0lBE&ab_channel=EkoPrasetyo

Theoretical background. In Use, units 68-69, 78-80. Grammar Way, 4, pp. 58-61. Round Up 6, pp. 156-160

Exercise 1. Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the adjective/adverb in brackets, adding any necessary words

1. Could you speak (slow)? I don't understand what you're saying. 2 I think French is (difficult) than English. 3 It's much (hot) this summer than it was last year. 4 Karen ran much (fast) Pamela during the race. 5 This car is too small for our family. We need something much (big). 6 Jupiter is (big) planet in the solar system.

Exercise 2. Open the brackets

1. (soon) we start, ... (soon) we'll get the job finished. 2. My meal was certainly not ... (tasty) yours. 3. This TV is three times.... (expensive) the one we saw in the last shop. 4. ... (fast) he ran, ... (tired) he became. 5. ... (hard) she works, ... (successful) she becomes. 6. The weather is getting ... (cold) every day. 7. The more books he reads, (good) at reading he becomes. 8. ... (few) and ... people are writing letters nowadays. 9. Lisa is becoming ... (outgoing) as the years go by.

Exercise 3. Put the adjectives in brackets into the correct form.

New Cross Memorial is 1) (busy) hospital 2) New York. It has 3) (modern) medical equipment and 4) (fast) ambulances 5) the city. Its waiting lists are 6) (short) 7) other hospitals' and many people say the medical staff are 8) (caring) 9) America. Jane works in the children's ward. Her work is 10) (hard) 11) some of her colleagues' because she is 12) (qualified) nurse on the ward. Despite this, she thinks she has 13) (good) job 14) the hospital. Her hours are 15) (bad) 16) her friends' but the rewards are 17) (great) 18) theirs.

Exercise 4. Put the verbs in brackets into a correct form (Gerund, Participle or Infinitive). Sometimes more than one form is possible

1. When the painter felt the ladder (begin) (slip) he grabbed the glitter (save) himself from (fall). 2. The snow kept (fall) and the workmen grew tired of (try) (keep) the roads clear. 3. He offered (lend) me the money. I didn't like (take) it but I had no alternative. 4. What was in the letter? – I don't know. I didn't like (open) it as it wasn't addressed to me. 5. Do you remember (read) about it? – No, at that time I was too young (read) newspapers. 6. Did you remember (book) seats for the theatre tomorrow? – Yes, I have the tickets here. Would you like (keep) them? I am inclined (lose) theatre tickets. 7. Try (avoid) (be) late. He

hates (be) kept (wait). 8. I didn't know how (get) to your house so I stopped (ask) the way. 9. I wish my refrigerator would stop (make) that horrible noise. You can't hear anyone (speak). 10. This book tells you how (win) at games without actually (cheat). 11. The gunman began (fire). He felt a bullet (graze) his cheek. 12. He heard the clock (strike) six and knew that it was time for him (get) up. 13. I can hear the bell (ring) but nobody seems (be coming) (open) the door. 14. Did you advise him (go) to the police? – No, I didn't like (give) any advice on such a difficult matter. 15. He wanted (put) my chameleon on a tartan rug and (watch) it (change) colour. 16. It is easy (see) animals on the road in daylight but sometimes at night it is very difficult (avoid) (hit) them. 17. The fire seems (be) out. – It can't be quite out. I can hear the wood (crackle). 18. I caught him (climb) over my wall. I asked him (explain) but he refused (say) anything, so in the end I had (let) him (go). 19. When at last I succeeded in (convince) him that I wanted (get) home quickly he put his foot on the accelerator and I felt the car (leap) forward. 20. I'm not used to (drive) on the left. – When you see everyone else (do) it you'll find it quite easy (do) yourself. 21. It is pleasant (sit) by the fire at night and (hear) the wind (howl) outside. 22. There was no way of (get) out of the building except by (climb) down a rope and Ann was too terrified (do) this. 23. We heard the engines (roar) as the plane began (move) and we saw the people on the ground (wave) good-bye. 24. It's no good (write) to him; he never answers letters. The only thing (do) is (go) and (see) him. 25. Why did you go all round the field instead of (walk) across it? – I didn't like (cross) it because of the bull. I never see a bull without (think) that it wants (chase) me. 26. The people in the flat below seem (be having) a party. You can hear the champagne corks (thud) against their ceiling. 27. I don't like (get) bills but when I do get them I like (pay) them promptly. 28. Ask him (come) in. Don't keep him (stand) at the door. 29. The boys next door used (like) (make) and (fly) model airplanes, but they seem to have stopped (do) that now. 30. I knew I wasn't the first (arrive), for I saw smoke (rise) from the chimney. 31. We watched the men (saw) the tree and as we were walking away heard it (fall) with a tremendous crash. 32. I hate (see) a child (cry). 33. We watched the children (jump) from a window and (fall) into a blanket held by the people below. 34. It is very unpleasant (wake) up and (hear) the rain (beat) on the windows. 35. He saw the lorry (begin) (roll) forwards but he was too far away (do) anything (stop) it. 36. There are people who can't help (laugh) when they see someone (slip) on a banana skin.

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=MSrkgwSgS0&ab_channel=EnglishwithAlex%C2%B7engVidEnglishClasses

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=JtqQfdX3mXY&ab_channel=EnglishTestBlog.com

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HBSf0Kboirc&ab_channel=7ESLLearningEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=eAGtfIjhP1k&ab_channel=EnglishwithLucy

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=L6pH8O3B4ak&ab_channel=KhanAcademy

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=yY89V2jX36E&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

Exercise 1. In each example the words on the left are connected with an activity (for example, a sport or an academic subject). Write the name of the activity. Each time the beginning of the word is given

1. calculate algebra equation: m...
2. government election minister: p...
3. finance trade industry: e...
4. running lumping throwing: a...
5. light heat gravity: ph...
6. exercises somersault parallel bars: gy...
7. computer silicon chip video games: el...

Exercise 2. Choose the correct form of the verb, singular or plural. In one sentence either the singular or plural verb is possible

1. Gymnastics is/are my favourite sport. ('is' is correct)
2. The trousers you bought for me doesn't/don't fit me.
3. The police want/wants to interview two men about the robbery last week.
4. Physics was/were my best subject at school.
5. Can I borrow your scissors? Mine isn't/aren't sharp enough.
6. Fortunately the news wasn't/weren't as bad as we expected.
7. Where does/do your family live?
8. Three days isn't/aren't long enough for a good holiday.
9. I can't find my binoculars. Do you know where it is/they are?
10. Do you think the people is/are happy with the government?
11. Does/Do the police know how the accident happened?
12. I don't like very hot weather. Thirty degrees is/are too warm for me.

Exercise 3. Most of these sentences are wrong. Correct them where necessary; Put 'RIGHT' if the sentence is already correct

1. The government want to increase taxes.
2. Susan was wearing a black jeans.
3. Brazil are playing Italy in a football match next Wednesday.
4. I like Martin and Jill. They're very nice persons.
5. I need more money than that. Ten pounds are not enough.
6. I'm going to buy a new pyjama.

7. The committee haven't made a decision yet.
8. Many people has given up smoking.
9. There was a police standing at the corner of the street.
10. Has the police arrived yet?
11. This scissors is not very sharp.

Exercise 4. Answer the questions using two of the following words each time *Chief accident belt card credit editor forecast number road room seat shop weather window*

1. This can be caused by bad driving. A road accident
2. If you're staying at a hotel, you need to remember this. Your ...
3. You should wear this when you're in a car. A ...
4. You can sometimes use this to pay for things instead of cash. A ...
5. If you want to know if it's going to rain, you can read or listen to this. The ...
6. This person is a top journalist. A ...
7. You might stop to look in this when you're walking along a street. A ...

Exercise 5. Join the two (or three) nouns. Sometimes you have to use -'s or -s'; and sometimes you have to use ... of ...

1. the owner/that car
2. the mother/Ann
3. the jacket/that man
4. the top/the page
5. the daughter/Charles
6. the cause/the problem
7. the newspaper/yesterday
8. the birthday/my father
9. the name/this street
10. the toys/the children
11. the new manager/the company
12. the result/the football match
13. the garden/our neighbours
14. the ground floor/the building
15. the children/Don and Mary
16. the economic policy/the government
17. the husband/Catherine
18. the husband/the woman-talking to Mary
19. the car/the parents/Mike
20. the wedding/the friend my Helen

Exercise 6. Read each sentence and write a new sentence beginning with the underline words

1. The meeting ... tomorrow... has been cancelled. Tomorrow's meeting

2. The storm ...last week... caused a lot of damage.
3. The only cinema in ...the town... has closed down.
4. Exports from ...Britain... to the United States have fallen recently.
5. Tourism is the main industry in ...the region.

Exercise 7. English plural nouns of foreign origin. Fill in the gaps with plural nouns to complete the following sentences in English

1. How many .. are there? (stratum).
2. Four ... have been presented so far. (hypothesis).
3. I am going to sell these two ... of stamps. (series).
4. For the first time these ... were noticed two years ago. (phenomenon)
5. Too many ... at the same time many lead to chaos. (stimulus)
6. All the ... questions were caused by inefficient management. (crisis)
7. He has written many excellent ... for us. (analysis)
8. Some ... can be found in the zoological gardens only. (species)
9. The ... collected by you are very important for us. (datum)
10. Are these two ... equal? (radius)
11. These ... were made by my uncle Sam when he was a prisoner of war. (die)
12. We have dealt with these ... for a long time. (phenomenon)
13. .. can be seen only through a microscope. (bacterium)
14. All these ... are inadequate. (analysis)
15. Have you ever heard of food produced from (algae)?

Exercise 8. Insert Articles

1. Germans love to take beach holidays in countries like ...Maldives, ...Bahamas and ...Dominican Republic. I think that's because those countries are so much warmer than ...Germany.
2. When we visited ...England, we spent five days in ...London and then we drove up to ...Scotland.
3. I can't wait until we visit ... United Arab Emirates. Did you know the tallest building in the world is in ... Dubai?
4. Our cruise makes stops in ..Netherlands, ...Belgium, ...United Kingdom and ...France. It's going to be amazing!
5. In...U.S., there are many immigrants from...Mexico,...Vietnam,Philippines and...Ethiopia.
6. A: What did...U.S.S.R. stand for? B: It stood for...Union of Soviet Socialist Republics.
7. I have been toQuebec and ...Alberta, but I haven't been to any other provinces in ...Canada.
8. While Sarah was working in... Ivory Coast, she visited ... Ghana and .. Liberia as well. She loves West Africa and hopes to work there again in the future.
9. The good thing about traveling in ...E.U. is that you can use the euro almost everywhere. There are a few countries, such as ...U.K. and ...Sweden, which use their own currencies.
10. Before Yoshiko moved to ...United States, she had heard of ...Texas and ...California, but she didn't realize those were state names.

Exercise 9. Insert Prepositions

1. The course begins ... 7 January and ends ... 10 March.
2. Mozart was born ... Salzburg ... 1756.

3. I like walking around the town ... night. It's always so peaceful.
4. Mr Davis is 63. He'll be retiring ... his job two years' time.
5. Tom left school ... the age of 16.
6. I fell asleep ... the film.
7. Turn left ... the traffic lights.
8. Don't sit ... that armchair. It's broken.
9. I was sitting ... the back of the car when it crashed.
10. What have you got ... your hand?

Exercise 10. Use correct tenses

1. Tim was very upset yesterday because he ... that he ... his wallet.
A) realised / will lose B) had realised / lost C) realised / had lost D) realises / loses E) has realised / lost
2. While mum ... the VCD I hired, I ... my assignment.
A) was watching / finished B) is watching I had finished C) watches / would finish D) will watch / am finishing E) was going to watch / finish
3. She ... the house when I ... to her after a long time.
A) will be cleaning / go B) had been cleaning / went C) has been cleaning / have gone D) is cleaning / am going E) has cleaned / have been
4. Some time ago, an interesting discovery ... by archaeologists on the Aegean Island of Kec.
A) had to be made B) has been made C) was made D) is made E) used to be made
5. For the time being, we ... for the exam, but this time tomorrow we ... the best movie of this year.
A) study / will watch B) are studying / will be watching C) have been studying / are watching D) are studying / will have watched E) have studied / will be watching
6. James Bond always drank champagne in the novels although he ... to wine by the time he ... it to the silver screen.
A) had switched / made B) has switched / has made C) switched / had made D) was switching / would make E) switched / was making
7. By the end of tomorrow, Dortmund ... Chelsea Champions League Cup.
A) is eliminating B) will have been eliminating C) has been eliminated D) will have eliminated E) eliminates
8. These days, people who ... manual work, often receive far more money than clerks who ... in offices.
A) are doing / are working B) were doing / were working C) have done / have worked D) do / work E) have been doing / work
9. The theatre company ... a grant of £6.000 and it ... a further £2.000 from elsewhere now.
A) will be given / seeks B) has been given / is seeking C) is given / has been seeking D) was given / has sought E) would be given / is seeking
10. She ... me at the meetings only on Sundays as a child.

A) was seeing B) has seen C) saw D) had seen E) is seeing

11. During the summer months, the monastery ... very busy, for it is visited by thousands of people who ... the pass in cars.

A) was / crossed B) is / crossed C) has been / cross D) is / cross E) has been / have crossed

12. ... and ... me about your trip to Denver.

A) Sitting down / tell B) To sit down/told C) Sit down / tell D) Having sat down / told E) Sitting down / telling

Exercise 11. Make necessary transformations

1. Katherine keeps making long distance telephone calls. Katherine is ...

2. James ate lunch before we arrived. By the time ...

3. Is there such a thing as happiness? Does ...

4. I haven't eaten Sushi for years. It's ...

5. I didn't know about Dan's divorce. I didn't know that ...

6. His homework won't be finished by the end of the day. He won't ...

7. His education in none of your business. His education does ...

8. He'll be at the meeting soon. It won't be long ...

Exercise 12. Correct mistakes if any

1. I often go swimming on Fridays.

2. Have you been ever to London?

3. Peter doesn't usually go to bed before midnight.

4. My sister Sue must take also an exam.

5. I was only joking, John! Don't get upset.

6. The weather is always hot and sunny at this time of year.

7. Did you both enjoy the pizza?

8. I never have met that man before.

9. Mary never walks home alone.

10. Come quickly here! I have something to tell you.

Homework 1. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form

1. Every time I go to the beach, sand (get) inside my shoes. 2. Five miles (be) a long way to walk. 3. Milk (be) good for your bones. 4 The council (meet) in the town hall every Wednesday. 5. Chess (be) his favourite board game. 6. Gravity (cause) things to fall towards the ground. 7. Greek (be) one of the most difficult languages to learn. 8. Music (help) me relax after a long day at work. 9. Pepper always (make) me sneeze. 10. Those new glasses (look) great on you. 11. Chemistry (not/interest) me at all. 12. The crockery (cost) a lot of money.

Homework 2. Singular and plural nouns quiz. Fill in the gaps with plural nouns to complete the following sentences in English

1. I don't know any jokes about... (mother-in-law). 2. He showed me

three ... and asked which one is mine. (fountain pen) 3. The ... noticed nothing. (passer-by) 4. The ... are on strike again. (postman) 5. The ... are to meet tomorrow. (commander-in-chief). 6. How many ... are to be shut? (coal-mine). 7. Not all ... in our history are worth mentioning. (Lord Chancellor). 8. The ... were asked to go home. (looker-on). 9. Where are my ...? (blackening-brush). 10. Tom and Rob are his (stepson). 11. I've got two (pocket-knife). 12. Sam and Tom are my ... (room-mate) Are you typical? (stay-at-home). 13. Put all the ... on my desk, please. (press-cutting). 14. Mary and Kate are . (sister-in-law). 15. Are there any ... there? (merry-go-round). 16. Are there any ... in your class? (boy scout). 17. There are three American .. in the gulf. (man-of-war). 18. ... are in fashion again. (bowler-hat)

Additional exercise 1. Choose correct form

1. I like your new trousers. Where have you bought ...
A them B them both. C them all D it
2. In order to prove he is innocent, we must find some ...
A evidence. B knowledge C information D means
3. There is always a very large ... at the church I go to.
A company. B spectator C audience D congregation
4. I feel like going out tonight. Let's go to a/an ...
A club B entertainment C dancing D night
5. I've bought a new ... for autumn.
A outfit B cloth C clothing D wear
6. The local ... has agreed to repair the road outside our local shop.
A jury B government C police D people
7. When the police arrived, we were very happy to see ...
A it B them C him or her D him
8. Thanks for a great weekend! We really had a/an ...
A hospitality B good time C fun D enjoyment
9. The car turned over, but luckily it didn't suffer serious ...
A damages B injuries C damage D injury
10. Sorry for being late, but I had a lot of ... to do.
A job B task C labour work

Additional exercise 2. Choose the singular or plural nouns to complete the following sentences in English

1. Your group ... very weak in English. (be)
2. The team ... determined to win. (be)
3. My family ... of three persons. (consist)
4. The staff ... ready to co-operate on the project. (be)
5. The police ... looking for Ken Brown everywhere. (be)
6. The committee to meet at five o'clock. (be)
7. The herd ... grazing now. (be)

8. The crew ... working all night. (be)
9. The audience small tonight. (be)
10. The class ... writing a test now. (be)
11. The Government ... to impose new taxation. (want)
12. The jury ... having lunch now. (be)
13. His family .. in various parts of the country. (live)
14. The crowd ... bigger than you could imagine. (be)
15. The jurynot announced the verdict yet. (have)
16. The committee ... already finished the session. (have)
17. The Government ... discussing this matter at the moment. (be)
18. The audience ... silent. (be)
19. Yesterday the crew ... visited by our ambassador. (be)
20. The team ... lost most of the matches so far. (have)

Revision test

1. The simple definition of a noun is: a person, place or pronoun thing
2. To decide if a word's a noun, look at its ending, position and function first letter
3. A word is almost certainly a noun if it ends with -ness -est
4. Which is a noun? Govern government
5. In which sentence does a noun follow a determiner?
The food's delicious. It's delicious food.
6. In which sentence does a noun follow an adjective?
Their team played well. It's a good, strong team.
7. Nouns often come after one or more adjectives adverbs
8. Nouns often function as the subject and/or object of an adjective a verb
9. "She plays guitar." The noun "guitar" is the subject of the verb object of the verb
10. In which sentence is the subject a pronoun? England is cold now. You'll need warm clothes.

THEME 2.6. PRONOUNS

Revision

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9DCN4rs8e9A&ab_channel=LearnEasyEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=a6FFBsVJAMU&ab_channel=SillySchoolEducation

Theoretical background. In Use, units 80-85, Round Up 6, Unit 11, Grammar Way, Unit 11

Exercise 1. Insert the following words

tweezers pliers binoculars whereabouts outskirts shears trunks handcuffs lodgings tongs

1. She removed the spell from her son's finger with ...
2. Police often use .. to restrain someone they have arrested.
3. ...are the best tool for pulling a nail out of a piece of wood.
4. My dad couldn't go in the pool because he'd forgotten to bring his
5. The Old Town and suburbs are nice, but the .. are full of high-rises and factories.
- 6.... are used for looking at far-off objects.
7. After moving to London, Patrick stayed in temporary ... until he found a flat of his own.
- 8 ... are a type of tool used to grip and lift (often hot) objects instead of holding them directly with your hands.
9. The police spokesperson said they were not yet aware of the suspect's
10. My electric hedge trimmer is broken, so I'll have to use my old ...

Exercise 2. Choose the correct option to complete the sentences below

1. Would you like a wine's glass wine glass glass of wine?
2. There are two big parks of cars cars parks car parks outside the walls.
3. This is a friend of Javier's a Javier friend a Javier's friend.
4. You must absolutely visit the city's centre city centre centre of the city's.
5. I need to buy a new computer's keyboard keyboard of computer computer keyboard.
6. Are you coming to Sunday's party Sunday party the party of Sunday.
7. Can you pass me a couple of tea cups cups of tea tea's cups from the shelf?
8. We'll be back home in the time of two weeks two weeks' time two week time.
9. He's one of the best chefs of Britain Britain's best chefs Britain best chefs.
10. Forgetfulness is one of the main old age's problems problems of old age problems of old age's.

Exercise 3 Choose the correct variant

- 1.This is ...

- a.the brother of the student I told you about.
 - b.the student I told you about's brother.
 - c.the brother of the student's I told you about.
2. It's ... to the top of the mountain. Are you sure you want to go?
- a.a walk of 5 hours
 - b.5 hours' walk
 - c.5 hour's walk
3. Some experts say that ... isn't healthy for babies and toddlers.
- a.cow milk
 - b.milk of cow
 - c.cow's milk
4. Write your name on ...
- a.the top's page
 - b.the top of the page
 - c.the page's top
5. There are two new ... in our street.
- a.shoe's shops
 - b.shoes shops
 - c.shoe shops
6. The number of ... has increased.
- a.road accidents
 - b.accidents of the road
 - c.road's accidents
7. A: Is that a ...? I need one to light the incense. B: No, that's just the ... where I keep my old coins.
- a.matchbox / matchbox
 - b.matchbox / box of matches
 - c.box of matches / matchbox
 - d.box of matches / box of matches
- 8... was a total success.
- a.The party of yesterday
 - b.Yesterday's party
 - c.Yesterday party
9. One of the flashback sequences towards the ... is absolutely brilliant.
- a.end of the film
 - b.film end
 - c.film's end
10. The ... is disappointing. Choose TWO correct options
- a.team's lack of ambition
 - b.lack of ambition of the team
 - c.team lack of ambition

Exercise 4 Rephrase the underlined words in the space provided at the end of each sentence so that they are correct or more common in English

EXAMPLE: The head of the shower is broken. ⇒ shower head

1. New study suggests that laziness might be a high intelligence sign.
2. The attacker hit the victim with a table's leg.
3. The world of sizes for clothes of women is bizarre.
4. They stole several rings of gold and an expensive watch.
5. We bought some cheese of goat.
6. I have two weeks of holiday next month.
7. This is the car of mum and dad.
8. I bought a new stories book.
9. Do you know the man in the black suit's name?
10. We want to rebuild the stone's wall at the back of the courtyard.

Exercise 5. Use the proper form of the non-finite verb instead of the infinitive in brackets

1. The children were taught not to speak to the grown-ups unless (speak) to.
2. (Power) in front of the explorers, rose a great range of mountains (cover) with ice.
3. They did all, as (instruct).
4. When (interview), the scientist refuse to comment on the latest discovery.
5. The patient (operate) on yesterday is feeling better now.
6. You must have your husband (operate) on.
7. The students watched their professor (operate) on the man.
8. While (give) evidence the witness avoided looking at the accused.
9. They looked at her with surprise as though not (believe) her story.
10. The girl stopped before the (close) door.

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=h_GnSOIfWf4&ab_channel=7ESLLeaningEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ztvx-TxHwj0&ab_channel=LearnEasyEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IK_0sIsfxg&t=45s&ab_channel=EnglishwithRonnie%C2%B7EnglishLessons4UwithengVid

Exercise 1 Write new sentences using a *friend of mine* etc

1. I am writing to one of my friends. I'm writing to a friend of mine.
2. We met one of your relations. We met a ...
3. Henry borrowed one of my books.
4. Ann invited some of her friends to her flat.
5. We had dinner with one of our neighbours.
6. I went on holiday with two of my friends.
7. Is that man one of your friends?
8. I met one of Lane's friends at the party.

Exercise 2. Complete the sentences using on my own/your own; by myself etc. Choose one of these verbs:

bake cut make write carry

1. Brian never goes to the hairdresser. He usually *cuts* his hair by himself
2. Mary doesn't often buy clothes. She usually ...
3. Paul is a singer. He sings songs written by other people but he also ...
4. We don't often buy bread from a bakery. We ...
5. Did you go on holiday on ...?
6. I'm glad I live with other people. I wouldn't like to live on ...
7. The box was too heavy for me to lift by ...
8. 'Who was Tom with when you saw him?' 'Nobody. He was by ...'
9. Very young children should not go swimming by ...
10. I don't think she knows many people. When I see her, she is always by ...
11. Do you like working with other people or do you prefer working by ...
12. We had no help decorating the flat. We did it completely on ...

Exercise 3. Complete each sentence using myself/yourself etc. with one of these verbs (in the correct form)

blame burn cut enjoy express hurt put

1. George ... himself while he was shaving this morning.
2. Bill fell down some steps but fortunately he didn't ... badly.
3. It isn't her fault. She really shouldn't ...
4. Please try and understand how I feel ... in my position.
5. They had a great time. They really ...
6. Be careful! That pan is very hot. Don't ...
7. Sometimes I can't say exactly what I mean. I wish I could ... better.
8. It's not my fault. You can blame ...
9. What I did was very wrong. I'm ashamed of ...
10. We've got a problem. I hope you can help ...
11. 'Can I take another biscuit?' 'Of course. Help ...'
12. Don't worry about Tom and me. We can look after ...
13. I gave them a key to our house so that they could let ... in.
14. When they come to visit us, they always bring their dog with ...

Exercise 4. Complete these sentences. Use myself/yourself etc. only where necessary, Use one of these verbs (in the correct form):

concentrate defend dry feel meet relax shave wash

1. Martin decided to grow a beard because he was fed up with ...
2. I wasn't very well yesterday but I ... much better today.
3. She climbed out of the swimming pool and ... with a towel.
4. I tried to study but I just couldn't ...
5. If somebody attacks you, you need to be able to ...
6. I'm going out with Chris this evening. We're ... at the station at 7.30.

7. You're always rushing around. Why don't you sit down and ...?
8. There was no water, so we couldn't ...

Exercise 5. Complete the sentences with -selves or each other

1. How long have you and Bill known ...?
2. If people work too hard, they can make ...ill.
3. I need you and you need me. We need ...
4. In Britain friends often give ... presents at Christmas.
5. Some people are very selfish. They only think of ...
6. Nora and I don't see ... very often these days.
7. We couldn't get back into the house. We had locked ... out.
8. They've had an argument. They're not speaking to ... at the moment.
9. We'd never met before, so we introduced ...
10. Who repaired the bicycle for you? Nobody. I repaired it ...
11. Did Brian have his hair cut by a hairdresser? No, he cut ...
12. Do you want me to post that letter for you? No, I'll ...
13. Who told you that Linda was getting married? Linda ...
14. Can you phone John for me? Why can't you ...?

Exercise 6 Complete the sentences with some or any + -body/-thing/-where.

1. We didn't buy .. fl.owers.
2. This evening I'm going out with ... friends of mine.
3. 'Have you seen ... good films recently?' 'No, I haven't been to the cinema for ages.'
4. I didn't have ... money, so I had to borrow ...
5. Can I have ... milk in my coffee, please?
6. I was too tired to do ... work.
7. You can cash these traveller's cheques at ... bank.
8. Can you give me ... information about places of interest in the town?
9. With the special tourist train ticket, you can travel on ... train you like.
10. If there are .. words you don't understand, use a dictionary.
11. I was too surprised to say ...
12. There's ... at the door. Can you go and see who it is?
13. Does ... mind if I open the window?
14. I wasn't feeling hungry, so I didn't eat ...
15. You must be hungry. Would you like ... to eat?
16. Quick, let's go! There's ... coming and I don't want ... to see us.
17. Sally was upset about ... and refused to talk to ...
18. This machine is very easy to use ... can learn to use it in a very short time.
19. There was hardly ... on the beach. It was almost deserted.
20. 'Do you live ... near Jim?' 'No, he lives in another part of town.'
21. We slept in a park because we didn't have ... to stay.
22. 'Where shall we go on holiday?' 'Let's go ... warm and sunny.'

23. They stay at home all the time. They never seem to go ...
24. I'm going out now. If ... phones while I'm out, can you tell them I'll be back at 11.30?
25. Why are you looking under the bed? Have you lost ...?
26. ... who saw the accident should contact the police.
27. Sue is very secretive. She never tells ... (2 words)
28. Which day shall I come? I don't mind. ...
29. What do you want to eat? ... I don't mind. Whatever you have.
30. Where shall I sit? It's up to you. You can sit ...you like.
31. What sort of job are you looking for? ... It doesn't matter.
32. What time shall I phone tomorrow? ... I'll be in all day.
33. Who shall I invite to the party? I don't mind. ... you like.
34. Which newspaper shall I buy? ... Whatever they have in the shop.

Exercise 5 Answer these questions using none/nobody/nothing/nowhere, no, none or any

1. What did you do? ...
2. Who were you talking to? ...
3. Where are you going? ...
4. How much luggage have you got? ...
5. How many children have they got? ...
6. Who did you meet? ...
7. What did you buy? ...
8. It was a public holiday, so there were ... shops open.
9. I have got ... money. Can you lend me some?
10. I couldn't make an omelette because there were ... eggs.
11. I couldn't make an omelette because there weren't ... eggs.
12. 'How many eggs have we got? ... I'll go and buy some from the shop if you like.'
13. We took a few photographs but ... of them were very good.
14. What a stupid thing to do! ... intelligent person would do such a thing.
15. I'll try and answer ... questions you ask me.
16. I couldn't answer ... of the questions they asked me.
17. We cancelled the party because ... of the people we invited were able to come.
18. I don't want ... to drink. I'm not thirsty.
19. The bus was completely empty. There was ... on it.
20. 'Where did you go for your holidays? ... I stayed at home.'
21. I went to the shops but I didn't buy ...
22. 'What did you buy? '... couldn't find ... I wanted.'
23. The town was still the same when I returned years later ... had changed.
24. Have you seen my watch? I've looked all over the house but I can't find it ...
25. There was complete silence in the room. ... said ...

Exercise 6. Insert Articles

1. Armadillos are animals which are most active at ... night. Sometimes, you see them during ... day, but that's less common.
2. Unfortunately, ... yesterday I had to spend ... whole day studying for my biology final. I think I did well on the test, but I won't know until ... next week.
3. I really loved ... Christmas when I was a kid. My favorite part was getting up in ... morning and finding all the gifts from Santa under the tree.
4. I'm so stressed out at work; I really need to take ... whole month off and just relax on a tropical beach somewhere. Maybe I can do that ... next summer.
5. When I was a kid, I spent ... summer on a beach in Florida. Now, I have to work ... every summer.
6. Do you want to meet for dinner on ... Wednesday? Or if you prefer, we could get together ... next Monday.
7. My cable television company has terrible customer service! I was on the phone with them for ... entire hour and nobody could answer my question. I think ... tomorrow, I'm going to call them up and cancel my service.
8. The conference started at ... noon and didn't finish until late in ... evening. We spent ... whole time listening to boring speeches.
9. Have you ever heard of ... Halloween? It's a holiday that Americans celebrate on ... October 31.
10. I didn't sleep at all ... last night. I spent ... whole night lying awake. And today, I can barely keep my eyes open.

Exercise 7. Insert Prepositions

1. They love to walk ...the country.
- 2... the road to Munich we nearly had an accident.
3. Our old school stood righta sweet shop.
4. He could not find his wallet. It had fallen ...the desk.
5. She leftSpain last Monday; she should be there by now.
6. There is a little town ...Italy where wine spills a fountain once a year.
7. I believe he lives ...France.
8. They were walking ...the river.
9. I nearly fell ... the ladder trying to exchange a light bulb.
10. The ship was last seen ... Cape Horn.

Exercise 8. Use correct tenses

Angelo had a tough decision to make. Was he going to spend long hours working as a teacher in Oxford again, as he (work) the previous summer, or should he devote his time to painting instead? He didn't have to work at the school, even though he (expect). No contracts (sign) yet. He knew that what he (have to do) was to take a risk. It was painting that he really loved, and it was right to spend your time doing what you (love), wasn't it? He (believe) so. The

reason why he (not do) it before now was that he might not be able to make money, but now he realised that money (be) not important. He had found his goal. The paintings might not sell but there was a possibility that they (sell), especially if he put all his effort into producing them. He knew that this was right for him. He would dedicate himself to (paint). 'I can do whatever I will,' he said to himself. 'I can do this.' And so the decision (make).

Exercise 9. Make necessary transformations

1. A phone call was the first we heard about them withdrawing from the concert. The first we heard ...
2. We need to run or the train will leave before we get there. Unless..., the train ... we get there.
3. "You really must stay for dessert," Kate's brother said to him. Kate's brother for dessert.
4. "A massage would do you a lot of good," Jake told Amy. "You ... a massage," Jake told Amy.
5. Even if it's very far, they want to go to Paris for a weekend break. Far ..., they want to go to Paris for a weekend break.
6. The town's population surrendered as soon as the enemy arrived. No sooner had the enemy arrived ... surrendered.
7. This building stands a very good chance of being closed as unsafe by the council. It's ... will be closed by council due to being unsafe.
8. Another student stole Carol's watch from the classroom. Carol ... by another student from the classroom.

Exercise 10. Correct mistakes if any

1. She recommended me that I take a few days off from work.
2. I tried to explain him the problem, but he had difficulty understanding me.
3. I don't know why you didn't go. If I were you, I should have gone.
4. Kate claims that if she got an MBA after finishing her bachelor's degree, she might have been considered for the position.
5. Kevin says he stopped to travel internationally because of his family.
6. We regret informing you that your application has been denied.
7. The interview was broadcasted live over the internet.
8. I'm so glad that he spoke in my behalf because I felt awful that I couldn't make it to the event.
9. At first I studied engineering in college, but I ended getting a marketing degree.
10. It was a frustrating situation because we were incapable of helping.

Homework 1. Insert pronouns

1. As ... was badly injured in the accident, Christine was taken to the nearest hospital.

2. Armenian cuisine is quite rich as ... includes both vegetable and meat dishes and various cooking styles.
3. If ... want to get reliable information about your symptoms, you should see a doctor rather than searching on the internet.
4. Andre's sister brought ... some cookies with a cup of coffee.
5. Only after looking for my glasses for more than an hour, I realized that I was already wearing
6. Watching football isn't a personal interest of ... , I prefer watching basketball.
7. From her early childhood, Alicia had written poems and in 1945 a play of ... was staged.
8. You must do your homework ... , otherwise you won't learn anything from it.
9. The guide gave the tourists some time to enjoy ... in the amusement park.
10. Lucas likes to work ... and nobody should interrupt him while working.
11. A good driver should focus on the road ... and ignore anything that could distract him.
12. There is ... to get help. Where is everybody?
13. We can eat at ... you wish as long as there's red meat.
14. ... in the world is as beautiful as my home town, I love this place.
15. I couldn't find ... to ask, so I just left.
16. There's ... at the door who wants to talk to you.
17. I am so sick that I feel ... but pain.
18. We don't have ... to eat, we need to go out to get some food.
19. I know he bought you ... very special but I can't remember what it was.
20. ... gets what they deserve as long as they work for it.
21. I've checked ..., yet I cannot find my slippers.
22. The witness said he saw ... from his bedroom window.
23. I need ... in the afternoon but I will see you afterwards.

Homework 2. Use another or other to complete the sentences

1. I feel so tired today. Shall we meet ... day?
2. I am starving, can I have ... piece of cake please?
3. You are so selfish. You never care about ... people's feelings.
4. This chair is broken. Can I have ... please?
5. Where are ...children?
6. I need ... five minutes to finish my lunch.
7. Do you have any ... ideas?
8. My new manager and I can't get on well with each ... nowadays.
9. I have two cars. One is black and ... is white.
10. Since I was busy with some ... things I couldn't help you.

Complete the following sentences with each other or a suitable reflexive pronoun (myself, yourself, herself...)

1. They told ... stories all night long.

2. I've always wanted to meet you but we've never had the chance to talk to ... until now.
3. Let me introduce ... My name is Alan.
4. She weighs ... every morning. She is obsessed with her weight.
5. He should give ... more time.
6. They were very good friends and often invited ... over.
7. No one wants to study with me so I am going to have to study by ...
8. They love ... and they are going to get married.
9. How could you do something like that. You must be ashamed of
10. The two students started running around. I thought they were going to hurt ... but fortunately nothing happened in the end.
11. The newly divorced couple tried to avoid seeing ... at the party.
12. When I first entered the manager's room, I thought he was talking to ... but then I realized he was on the phone.

Additional exercise 1. Choose correct words

A mysterious house

I climbed upstairs to my bedroom, having been told *those it one this ones them* was on the second floor of the vast building. There were several other rooms on this floor, but all of *this those ones it them one* were locked except for mine. The house contained a large collection of portraits. Most of *ones it those one them this* dated from the eighteenth century, although a few smaller *this ones them it one those* seemed to be more recent. The portraits lined the walls of the staircase and the hallway. I felt their eyes watching me. It seemed to me that *ones them it this those of* the women looked at me sorrowfully, while *this those it them ones* of the men gazed disapprovingly into the distance. I opened the door to my bedroom. I found that *this them ones it those one* had dark green wallpaper and was furnished with dark wooden furniture, and *this those ones them one it* gave *those one ones this them it* a mysterious and oppressive feeling. There was a large bed in the centre of the room. Next to it was a small table, and a larger *this those one them it ones* was in front of the window. I sat down and started to write in my journal.

Additional exercise 2. Complete the exercise with the correct possessive pronouns

Kevin: We want to go away for the weekend, but we have a problem.

Jim: What's that?

Kevin: We need a tent. We gave *mine your hers her ours theirs* to my uncle and he hasn't brought it back. Can you lend us *mine your hers her ours theirs*?

Jim: I don't really want to give *mine your hers her ours theirs* to anyone. Selena has got one. Can't you ask her for *mine your hers her ours theirs*

Kevin: No, *mine your hers her ours theirs* is too small for the two of us, and it is not nice like *mine your hers her ours theirs*.

Jim: I see, Mike has got one, too. What's wrong with *mine your hers her ours theirs*?

Kevin: Oh! No! It's terribly old, and it lets the rain in.

Jim: OK. How about the Browns'? *mine your hers her ours theirs* is nice and big.

Kevin: Well, *mine your hers her ours theirs* is too big for two people. Why don't you let us have *mine your hers her ours theirs*? You know it's ideal for us.

Jim: OK. All right then. Be careful with it.

Kevin : Oh we will. I promise. Thank you very much, Jim.

Revision test

1. The old woman lived alone, with ... to look after ...
 - A someone / her
 - B anyone / herself
 - C everyone / she
 - D no one / her
 - E anyone / she's
2. ... two rings here on my little finger belonged to ... grandmother.
 - A These / my
 - B That / mine
 - C Those / me
 - D The / myself. E) This / my
3. When the little boy grabbed the lizard, ... tail broke off in ... hand.
 - A it's / his
 - B it / him
 - C its / his
 - D it / one's
 - E its / he's
4. A baby learns the meaning of words as ... are spoken by others and later uses ... in sentences.
 - A their / they
 - B they / them
 - C they / themselves
 - D it / them
 - E they / it
5. Some of these clothes are ..., and the rest of ... belong to Zack.
 - A yours / it
 - B my / them
 - C hers / their
 - D me / they
 - E mine / them
6. As for ... I prefer to let people make up ... minds.

- A myself / each other's
 - B I / his own
 - C mine / one another's
 - D me / their own
 - E my / theirs
7. The solicitor wrote a letter to Ann and ... in which he asked us if we could settle the matter between ...
- A I / us
 - B me / us
 - C myself / ours
 - D mine / our
 - E me / we
8. As ... cuts it as well as he does, I always have my hair cut at Johnson's.
- A anyone
 - B someone else's
 - C no one else
 - D everyone
 - E nobody's
9. They decided to buy the house because ... location would allow ... to get to work very easily.
- A theirs / them
 - B it / themselves
 - C its / them
 - D they / us
 - E its / their
10. Our dog is of a very good breed as ... is the offspring of two very champion dogs and inherited ... features.
- A this / its
 - B he / them
 - C she / theirs
 - D that / his
 - E it / their

THEME 2.7. LINKING WORDS AND CLAUSES OF TIME, PURPOSE AND RESULT

Revision

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IK_0sIsfxg&ab_channel=EnglishwithRonnie%C2%B7EnglishLessons4UwithengVid

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=oLdGJAfI-uU&ab_channel=IntelloKids

Theoretical Background. In Use, Units 110-119, Grammarway 4, Unit 10, p. 144 New Round Up 6, Round Up 6, p.71-81

Exercise 1 Choose correct form

1. A lot of people like that candidate, ...

but I myself don't believe much of what him tells us.

but I myself don't believe much of what he tells ourselves.

but I meself don't believe much of what he tells us.

but I myself don't believe much of what he tells us.

2. Thanks for offering to help, ...

but we, Bill and I, can do it myself.

but we, Bill and me, can do it ourselves.

but we, Bill and I, can do it ourselves.

but us, Bill and I, can do it ourselves.

3. Do you think ...

the two of you can behave yourselves for an hour or two until we, your father and I, return from the supermarket.

the two of you can behave yourselves for an hour or two until we, your father and me, return from the supermarket?

the two of you can behave yourselves for an hour or two until we, your father and I, return from the supermarket.

the two of you can behave you for an hour or two until we, your father and I, return from the supermarket?

4. He's a famous actor.

Do you think he would mind if we introduced us, to him?

Do you think yourself he would mind if we introduced ourselves to him?

Do you think he would mind himself if we introduced ourselves to him?

Do you think he would mind if we introduced ourselves to him?

5. During the meal, ...

Cathy excused her from the table because she received a phone call from her friends.

Cathy excused herself from the table because she received a phone call from hers friends.

Cathy excused herself from the table because she received a phone call from her friends.

Cathy she excused herself from the table because she received a phone call from her friends.

6. They were very ...

pleased with themselves for completing the project on time, so they, him and his assistants, decided to go home early.

pleased with theirselves for completing the project on time, so they, he and his assistants, decided to go home early.

pleased with themselves for completing the project on time, so they, himself and his assistants, decided to go home early.

pleased with themselves for completing the project on time, so they, he and his assistants, decided to go home early.

7. Before going to France ...

with them, her and her husband, I bought myself a new set of luggage.

with them, she and her boyfriend, I bought myself a new set of luggage.

with them, her and her husband, I bought me a new set of luggage.

with themselves, her and her boyfriend, I bought myself a new set of luggage.

8. I hear that ...

the union president himself called this meeting, and he wants as many of us as possible to attend.

the union president itself called this meeting, and he wants as many of us as possible to attend.

the union president hisself called this meeting, and he wants as many of us as possible to attend.

the union president himself called this meeting, and he wants as many of ourselves as possible to attend.

9. I usually find ...

the subject itself fascinating, but the speaker was not as interesting as us, my friends and I, had expected.

the subject himself fascinating, but the speaker was not as interesting as we, my friends and myself, had expected.

the subject itself fascinating, but the speaker was not as interesting as we, my friends and me, had expected.

the subject itself fascinating, but the speaker was not as interesting as we, my friends and I, had expected.

10. The students wanted to pass the course, ...

so they concentrated themselves on their assignments night after night.

so they concentrated on theirs assignments night after night.

so themselves concentrated on their assignments night after night.

so they concentrated on their assignments night after night.

Exercise 2. Correct the following sentences. Each sentence has one pronoun error in it

1. One must work hard and save money because in years to come it is difficult to know how much money they may need to survive.
2. My brother and his wife were caught in the storm on her way home last night.
3. Both Rosemary and her sister took her medicine before going to bed.
4. It is sometimes difficult for one to imagine what might happen when you grow old.
5. Neither my parents nor my sister brought much luggage with them.
6. Either Samuel or his friends will have to bring his car tomorrow.
7. The boys and their father couldn't find his way home through the jungle.
8. You might have problems getting a ticket at the station but one can always book in advance.
9. Joe and his friends had no alternative but to retrace his steps back through the plantation.
10. If one doubts the truth of the man's accusations we can always go to the police.

Exercise 3. Adding the correct pronouns

1. I often have problems starting ... car in the mornings.
2. The young bird fell from the nest and hurt ... badly.
3. When you two boys go on holiday, enjoy ... but make sure ... are careful.
4. I have an elder brother who gave ... some advice which ... have never forgotten.
5. We were astonished when he gave ... the money but we enjoyed spending it.
6. The soldiers were tired of carrying ... heavy packs.
7. My wife complains that ... boss always gives .. too much work to do.
8. My friend had no money, so I lent ... \$20. He repaid ... debt the next day.
9. You must try to work harder, John. Force ... to study regularly and put more effort into ... studies.
10. The girls were delighted because ... had won the first hockey game of the season.

Exercise 4. Put in a suitable reflexive or emphatic pronoun

1. I did it all by ...
2. The contractors agreed among ... not to send in their tenders. They wanted to let that man do the work ...
3. Simon organized the party ... It was a small affair, but we enjoyed ... very much.
4. "Suit ..., sir. There are many people who will be beside ... with happiness to possess this. You can take it or leave it," he said.
5. I am no tired ..., but I think that my little brother is. He walked by ... and simply refused to be carried. You ... would admire his pluck too.
6. The headmaster ... spoke to the wrongdoer. If I were him, I wouldn't worry ... over such a rascal as him. Even his father ... couldn't reform him.

7. I hope that she can sew the dress ... If her sister can sew one for ..., I don't see why my sister can't.
8. Everybody enjoyed ..., didn't they ? Even Richard, who is very conservative, enjoyed ... too.
9. As my brother ... cannot accompany me, I will go by ... My sister went by ... before and she wasn't afraid.
10. He has been there ... He says that the place ... is beautiful but the hotels are dirty. Perhaps he ... is too fussy.
11. The boys ... were eager to cook, but not one of them knew how to clean a chicken by ...
12. She reminded her pupils to behave ... during the inspector's visit. Otherwise she ... would get the blame for their misconduct.
13. One should guard ... from danger, but there are times when danger ... appeals to one.
14. Do the work ..., you lazy boy. Do you want me to get your father ... here to make you do so ? You cannot always ask others to do it for you because they have their own work to do ...
15. Recently he composed a song ... The words ... were beautiful but the music was not very good.
16. Jim and I agreed between ... to paint the fence. Jim ... will start from that end and I ... will start from here.
17. I baked this cake by ... Wouldn't you like to taste it ...? Have you ever baked cakes by ...?
18. She was very pleased with ... when she received the prize from the Chief Minister ... Her parents too were beside ... with joy when they heard of her success.
19. He cannot express ... clearly in English. He is trying hard to learn the language by ... and his sister is helping him though she ... is not very good at it.
20. He checked the accounts ..., so they must be correct. If there had been any mistakes, he would have corrected them.
21. They did not finish the project by ... The teachers and even the headmaster ... helped them. As for us, we completed ours by ... This fact, in ..., should help us win first prize.

Exercise 5. Use the proper form of the non-finite verb instead of the infinitive in brackets

1. (to recollect) the invitation of the schoolmaster, he inquired the way to Curran Street, where, closely (to regard) by the neighbours, he knocked several times on the door of No 29. 2. There was some dignity which Aunt Cal and Aunt Josephine had acquired (to live) here beside the proud sea, that would not let them (to show) surprise. 3. (to surround) by difficulties and uncertainty, he longed for Christine. Letters were no use; he had no talent for (to express) himself on paper. Yet she was not returning to Blanelly until the first week in

September. He turned a fretful, hungry eyes upon the calendar (to count) the days that intervened. There were still twelve of them to run. He felt, with (to grow) despondency (зневiра), that they might as well be past, for all the prospect which they held for him. 4. Far from (to annoy) Claire this has delighted her. 5. I want (to read) and I think I am justified in doing what I can (to make) my book readable. 6. Gracie, her hands tightly (to clench), her breast (to heave), turned away her head. 7. I hoped that I should never (to send) to that war. 8. He was silent. It was not difficult (to guess) what she had discovered. 9. I supposed she was nervous and wanted (to delay) as long as possible (to meet) the strange woman who had come (to take) her place. 10. A silence followed, during which he continued (to regard) Stephen with a satiric compression of his lips. Once he seemed about (to speak) but instead he shrugged slightly, beckoned with a finger for fresh drinks and began (to talk) about the next day's races. 11. The very simplicity of the jewelry seemed (to demand) attention. 12. (to bounce) on the rough springs of the taxi seat (to move) swiftly along the foreign streets she didn't know exactly what she wished (to communicate) to her son.

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=BECe_0k1RI8&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6fcdSQEon7E&ab_channel=AccurateEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=BDyef4iPPJE&ab_channel=ToThePointEnglishwithBen.

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=-JqAs_vdQb8&ab_channel=mmmEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=DrLfR2lzEkg&ab_channel=SpeakConfidentEnglish

Exercise 1. Fill in the gaps with: until, for, while, when, just as, as soon as, before, by the time, as long as or since

1. I used to play hockey ... I was in secondary school. 2. You can borrow the book for ... you like. 3. The doorbell rang ... he was having a shower. 4. You can't watch TV ... you've finished your homework. 5. The concert had already started ... Stan got there. 6. We've been waiting at the bus stop ... two o'clock. 7. ... he had sat down to eat, the telephone started ringing. 8. Jake will start working in his father's company ... he has graduated from college. 9. Lisa has been living in Germany ... ten years. 10 ... he entered the classroom, he turned off his phone.

Exercise 2. Fill in: by the time, until or by

1. By the time the last marathon runner crossed the finishing line, nearly everyone had gone home. 2. Don't try to show anyone this trick ...you have practised it in front of a mirror. 3. If he carries on making investments like that, he'll be a millionaire . ..he's 25. 4. We waited . . . our parents had gone to bed, then we turned on the television. 5. The building had burnt to the ground ... the fire brigade arrived. 6. The meeting had already finished ... 5:30. 7. Her father warned her to be home ... midnight

Exercise 3. Join the sentences using the words in brackets

1. The secretary contacted me. She reminded me about the meeting. (in order to). 2. Harold studied hard. He didn't want to fail his History test. (so as not to) 3. He took an umbrella with him. He didn't want to get wet in the rain. (avoid) 4. She saved money. She intended to buy a car. (with a view to) 5. Jane gave Bob her phone number. Then Bob could ring her. (so that) 6. Let's buy some biscuits. We may have guests. (in case) 7. He took a taxi to the airport. He worried he would miss his flight. (for fear that)

Exercise 4. Choose correct variant

Exam time means study time! It's very important to get the most out of your time when you sit down with your books. Here's how: find a quiet place to study 1) so that / to you'll be able to concentrate, and switch off your mobile phone 2) so as not to / not to be disturbed while you are working. Many students make a 'to do' list before they study 3) with the aim / with a view of reminding themselves how much time they should spend on each topic. Another good idea is to give yourself a reward each time you achieve a goal 4) in order to / in case stay motivated. If you are studying with friends, agree that you will only talk about the subject you are studying 5) so as not to / not to waste time. Finally, remember to take regular breaks. You need a short break every 30 minutes or so 6) to prevent / to avoid getting too tired.

Exercise 5 Fill in: so, such or such a

1. A: Why are you in ... hurry? B: Because I have to get to the shops before I go to work. 2. A: I have . .. much work to do! I feel really stressed. B: Don't worry. I can help you if you want. 3. A: It's . . . nice weather! Do you want to go for a walk? B: I'd love to. Let's go! 4. A: What did you think of the concert? B: I loved it. I've never seen ... great live performance before. 5. A: I really love that mobile phone. B: So do I, but it's . . . expensive.

Exercise 6. Insert Articles

Sometimes, ... names can be confusing in ... different languages. Much to ... confusion of many .. English learners, ... Europa is not the name of ... continent, but rather ... moon which orbits ... Jupiter. And although many people have never heard of it, it is ... especially important moon. Scientists have

discovered that ... surface is entirely covered with ... ice, but researchers hope that beneath ... frozen layer lies ... ocean. Nobody knows if ... center of the moon is frozen solid or if it is ... liquid water. If some vast, undiscovered ocean does exist, it would be ... cold and harsh environment; however, some scientists believe that ... life might exist there just like it does at ... bottom of Earth's oceans. Some say that ... only way to find out is to send ... probe to drill down into ... ice and see what's there. Such ... mission would be ... expensive project indeed.

Exercise 7. Insert Prepositions

1. Most people agree that kindergarten contributes ... the child's mental development.
2. Since Jennifer was a year younger than her friends, she had a hard time keeping ... with them.
3. In most countries, children start the primary school ... the age of six.
4. Although he studied hard, he couldn't succeed ... getting a high score in his test.
5. There are different sets of language learning sets available ... all age groups.
6. All candidates are looking forward ... the announcement of our test scores.
7. Since I will be busy ... my homework and prepare ... the exam tomorrow, I don't think I will be able to go out tonight.
8. The students walk five kilometers to school, so they need to get up very early ... the morning.
9. Since our school was next to our house, I used to come home ... lunch time.
10. I was born ... the 23rd ... April, so there is no school when it's my birthday.

Exercise 8. Use correct tenses

1. Mother ... Ali that he ... to clean the garage after school.
A) reminded / will promise B) has reminded / promises C) had reminded / promised D) will remind / promises E) reminded / had promised
2. The injured ... to the ambulance while the people ... around the crime scene.
A) were being taken / were gathering B) have been taken / gathered C) have been taken / gather D) were taken / would gather E) would be taken / had gathered
3. I couldn't find out what ...
A) happens B) will happen C) had happened D) has happened E) is happening
4. "Hi, mum!" ... Peter, as he ... himself down on the floor with a groan.
A) said / had thrown B) says / has thrown C) has said / is throwing D) said / was throwing E) was saying / threw
5. It was six o'clock and he ... bored because he ... for two hours.
A) was / was waiting B) had been / had waited C) is / has been waiting D) was / is waiting E) was / had been waiting

6. The headline of the Guardian was quite impressive: "Saddam Hussein ... in Tikrit".

A) had lived B) lives C) would live D) will live E) has been living

7. In those times, life was hard and bitter for both of them. For a whole year, they ... as complete strangers to each other as if they ...

A) remained / had never met B) had remained / had never met C) remained / never meet D) would remain / would never meet E) were remaining / had never met

8. By ten o'clock, he ... the engine and he ... to paint the garage when I paid a visit to him.

A) will have repaired / has started B) repaired / was starting C) was repairing / had started D) repairs / starts E) had repaired / was going to start

9. A few years ago, it ... that certain cells of the human body never ...

A) is found / died B) was found / die C) has been found / died D) had been found / dies E) was found / dies

10. Since they ... acting, they ... in three plays, a television commercial and two TV dramas.

A) begin / have performed B) began / have performed C) begin / are performing D) began / have been performing E) began / had been performing

11. The peak ... the prize for mountaineers, especially if it ... before.

A) is / has not been attained B) will be / wasn't attained C) was / had not been attained D) has been / weren't attained E) was / hasn't been attained

12. She last drove a car three years ago. Since she ... an accident, she ... a car for three years.

A) had had / didn't drive B) had had / hasn't driven C) had / hasn't driven D) has / hasn't driven E) has had / hasn't been driving

Exercise 9. Make necessary transformations

1. I'm just about to give up this diet because it's not working at all. **point** ... this diet up because it's not working at all.

2. Please do those photocopies whenever you have the time. **happen** Please do those photocopies if ... the time.

3. If you really want to spend the whole night studying, there's nothing I can do. **insist** If you ... the whole night, there's nothing I can do.

4. The match will be postponed if it keeps raining. **mean** Further rain ... postponement of the match.

5. "I can't stand what his assistant said about me," said Barbara. **objected** Barbara ... the assistant said about her.

6. "Ian took the money, not his brother Dylan," Susan said. **it** According to Susan, it was Ian who ... took the money, not Dylan.

7. The shop was closed for a week while they decorated it. **Done** While was being done... , the shop was closed for a week.

8. If Phil is having so many problems at school, maybe some private tuition would help him. **From** Maybe Phil would ... tuition if he's having so many problems at school.

Exercise 10. Correct mistakes if any

1. When the check came, I tried to pay but John told me to put away my wallet and insisted that he paid for dinner.
2. They had managed a few crises in the past, so they were able to handle this situation fairly well.
3. If you would've told me, I would have given you my honest advice.
4. The four participants discussed it between themselves.
5. We thought we were going to expand this year, but we actually have less people now than we did two years ago.
6. She's trying to concentrate herself on finishing her degree.
7. Unfortunately, the species has gotten extinct due to human activity.
8. I'm a little afraid to do this by my own.
9. He told me that he had never been in that restaurant before.
10. Never before I had seen something quite like that.

Homework 1 Fill in: after, as soon as, since, before, by the time, while, until or as long as

A: Welcome to your first driving lesson, Ms Thorton. Are there any questions you'd like to ask me 1) ... we begin? B: No, not really. It's been a long time 2) ... I last drove a car. I took a few lessons 3) ... I was studying at university, but I never got very far. So, I'm a bit nervous to be honest. A: Don't worry. 4) ... I've been a driving instructor, I've never seen a first-time driver who wasn't at least a little nervous. And I'll only take you out on the road 5) ... we have practised the basics in the car park for a couple of lessons. B: OK. I don't want to drive on the road 6) I feel confident enough. A: That shouldn't be a problem. But when we get out on the road, just remember to tell me 7) ... you need to stop. And I assure you that 8) ... you have finished this course, you will have become a safe and confident driver.

Correct the sentences.

We waited for you by it got dark . . . it.. 2 When the Queen arrives, we must all stand up . . . 3 As soon as I'll get home, I'll have something to eat. .. 4 Can you phone me when you will be ready? ... 5 Every time I will go shopping, I spend too much money... . 6 I'll phone you ifthere will be a problem... 7 The children cleared the table by the time they had finished eating... 8 Until we went to bed, it was nearly morning .. . 9 I'll call you immediately as I reach my hotel. ..

Homework 2. Insert So, Such

In the late 1800s, London was 1) unhealthy place to live that the average life expectancy was as low as 24 years of age. The air was filled with 2) ... much

coal smoke that thick smog hung permanently over the city. There was also 3) ... much rubbish in the streets that disease was everywhere. The city was 4) ... overcrowded that up to 30 people would often live together in the same room because there were 5) few houses. It was 6) ... difficult life for the poor. They lived in 7) ... filthy conditions, had 8) ... little to eat, and led 9) ... terrible lives that eventually rich Londoners started to take notice. One of the most famous English authors, Charles Dickens, was 10) upset about how the poor lived that he wrote several books describing their hardships including *Oliver Twist* and *Hard Times*.

Additional exercise 1. Put in by or until

1. Fred has gone away. He'll be away ... Monday.
2. Sorry, but I must go. I have to be at home ... 5 o'clock.
3. I've been offered a job. I haven't decided yet whether to accept it or not. I have to decide ... Thursday.
4. I think I'll wait ... Thursday before making a decision.
5. It's too late to go shopping. The shops are only open ... 5. 30. They'll be closed now.
6. I'd better pay the phone bill. It has to be paid ... tomorrow.
7. Don't pay the bill today. Wait ... tomorrow.
8. A: Have you finished redecorating your house? B: Not yet. We hope to finish ... the end of the week.
9. A: I'm going out now. I'll be back at 4.30. Will you still be here? B: I don't think so. I'll probably have gone out ... then.
10. I'm moving into my new flat next week. I'm staying with a friend ... then.
11. I've got a lot of work to do. ... the time I finish, it will be time to go to bed.
12. If you want to do the exam, you should enter ... 3 April.

Additional exercise 2. Match the part of the sentences and put the verbs into the correct tense

1. She'll phone her mother
2. He bought a car
3. Our parents will leave
4. The doorbell rang
5. The phone had stopped ringing
6. She was watching the baby
7. I'll tell him to call you
8. He'll watch TV

A while she (have) a bath.

B after he ... (do) his homework.

C as it ... (sleep) peacefully.

D as soon as I ... (see) him.

E by the time I ... (reach) it.

F after he ... (pass) his driving test.
G as soon as the babysitter ... (arrive)
H in case she(stay) at home.

Revision test Use the correct item

1. We'll leave as / as soon as we're ready.
2. Don't forget to brush your teeth until / before you go to bed.
3. We can buy tickets when / until we get on the boat.
4. While / After I was watching TV, the programme was interrupted.
5. Until / By the time we got to the party, nearly everyone had left.
6. You mustn't talk while / until you are sitting an exam.
7. We went into the lecture hall just as / while the professor began to speak.
8. He didn't get home until / after 10:00 pm.

THEME 2.8. LINKING WORDS. CLAUSES OF CONCESSION, REASON

Revision

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=BECe_ok1RI8&t=75s&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

Theoretical background. In Use, Units 110-119, Grammarway 4, Unit 10, New Round Up 6, Round Up 6, p.71-81

Exercise 1. Underline the correct item

It was a cold and stormy night. Bobby had just come home after going to the cinema. He was so tired that he went up to his room 1) so that / to sleep. The window was open, so he quickly shut it 2) so to / so that the rain wouldn't get in. As soon as he got into bed, however, he heard a noise coming from his wardrobe. Bobby was terrified! He immediately jumped up, and reached for his torch. Slowly, he walked towards his wardrobe 3) so as not to / not to be heard. His imagination was running wild. "Could it be a monster?" he thought. He slowly opened the door and turned on his torch 4) for / in order to see what it was. Suddenly, his neighbour's cat, Fluffy, jumped on him. She had come in from the bedroom window 5) to / in case get out of the rain.

Exercise 2 Fill in: so, such or such a(n)

1. I am.... tired of the long drive to work every day that I wish I could just stay at home.
2. The book was exciting that he couldn't put it down.
3. I had ... awful headache that I spent the day in bed.
4. Katie had ... little money that she didn't go on holiday.
5. The film was ... funny that I laughed all the way through.
6. He is ... good tennis player that no one can beat him.
7. She has ... pretty eyes that everyone admires them.
8. Ann has put on.. . lot of weight that she can't get into her trousers.
9. You talk ... fast that I can't understand you.
10. He is ... interesting person that I can talk to him for hours.

Exercise 3. Rewrite the following sentences adding so or such and a result clause

1. I was happy. I cried.
2. It was cold. The river froze.
3. It was a nice day. We went swimming.
4. It's an interesting film. I want to see it again.
5. It was a difficult test. Many students failed.
6. It was a difficult book. I couldn't understand it.

7. She's a sweet child. Everyone loves her.
8. It was a great play. I saw it twice.
9. He is handsome. He could be an actor.
10. It was raining hard. We stayed in.

Exercise 4 Rewrite the text using: such / so ... that

I was nervous when my exam results arrived. I didn't want to open the envelope. My friend Emma was with me. It was an important day. I needed her support. She said I didn't need to worry. But Emma always gets good grades. She doesn't understand what it feels like to fail. I never do well in exams. My problem is I get nervous. I can't think properly. But this year, my Science teacher, Mrs Jones, helped me. She gave me tips on how to study and how to answer exam questions properly. She is an amazing teacher. There isn't anyone in my class who doesn't like her. Anyway, I finally opened the envelope. I had passed all my subjects! Not only that; I got an 'A' in Science! It was a high mark. I couldn't believe my eyes. I was so happy!

Exercise 5 Use Gerunds or Infinitives in place of the verbs in brackets

I. 1. We saw this film last month. Do you remember (see) it? 2. He was very forgetful. He never remembered (lock) the garage door when he put the car away. 3. Don't ask me to pay the bill again. I clearly remember (pay) it a month ago. 4. Did you remember (buy) bread for dinner? – Yes, I have the bread here. 5. Do you remember (post) the letter? – Yes, I remember quite clearly; I posted it in the letter-box near my gate. 6. Did you remember (air) the room? – No, I didn't. I'll go back and do it now. 7. She remembers part of her childhood quite clearly. She remembers (go) to school for the first time and (play) with Dick in the garden. 8. Did you remember (give) him the message? – No, I didn't. I'll go and do it now. 9. She forgot (bring) the sugar; she left it on the kitchen table. 10. Where is my dictionary? Have you forgotten (borrow) it a fortnight ago? 11. She often told her little boy, "You must never forget (say) "please" and "thank you". 12. Why are you late again? Have you forgotten (promise) me that you would never be late again? 13. Do stop (talk); I am trying to finish a letter. 14. I didn't know how to get to your house so I stopped (ask) the way. 15. We stopped once (buy) petrol and then we stopped again (ask) someone the way.

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nX8N9RiGCZg&ab_channel=Adam%E2%80%99sEnglishLessons%C2%B7engVid

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=M_2N2Ts8DxQ&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

<https://www.youtube.com/shorts/Yjrqrkqwqqs>

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=lv8dQNFqcB4&ab_channel=Adam%E2%80%99sEnglishLessons%C2%B7engVid

Exercise 1. Fill in: even though, however, whereas, though or despite

1. A: Does Laura have a driving licence? S: No. She took a lot of lessons; ... she failed the test. 2. A: Isn't John too short to play basketball? S: Not at all... his size, he's actually a great player. 3. A: I think we have the same type of MP3 player. S: No. Yours can play videos mine can't. 4. A: Arsenal lost their match at the weekend . S: I know. They're still top of the league table.. . 5. A: .. Sarah eats a lot of junk food, she never puts on weight. S: True, but it's still bad for her health.

Exercise 2 Rephrase the sentences using the words in brackets

1. Alan has a cold. He wants to play in the football match. (despite, although)
2. I studied all weekend. I didn't pass the test. (nevertheless, in spite of)
3. Paul looks exhausted. He's just come back from a holiday (even though, however)
4. John plays the guitar very well. He has a terrible voice. (but, however)
5. It was snowing. He decided to walk to school. (although, despite)
6. Spielberg is my favourite director. I don't have any of his films on DVD. (while, yet)

Use your own ideas to complete the following sentences:

1. a. He passed the exam although ...
b. He passed the exam because ...
2. a. I didn't eat anything although ...
b. I didn't eat anything in spite of ...

Make one sentence from two. Use the word(s) in brackets in your sentences

1. I couldn't sleep. I was tired. (despite).
2. They have very little money. They are happy. (in spite of)
3. My foot was injured. I managed to walk to the nearest village. (although)
4. I enjoyed the film. The story was silly. (in spite of)
5. We live in the same street. We hardly ever see each other. (despite)
6. I got very wet in the rain. I had an umbrella. (even though)

Use the words in brackets to make a sentence with though at the end

1. The house isn't very nice. (like/garden) I like the garden though.
2. It's quite warm. (a bit windy) ...
3. We didn't like the food. (ate) ...
4. Liz is very nice. (don't like/husband) I ...

Exercise 3 Rewrite the sentences using the connector given in brackets

1. Paul was an hour late. He missed the train. (because)
2. I borrowed your lawn mower. You weren't using it. (as)
3. We had no electricity during the storm. We had to use candles. (so)
4. He needed a good mark. He studied hard for the test. (Since)
5. It's raining. We have decided to stay at home. (As)
6. Tom won't be able to go with us to the theatre. He has to work. (because)

7. The windows were all open. A lot of mosquitoes came into the room. (Consequently)
8. We knew what to expect. We were not surprised at what happened. (Therefore)
9. Would you consider it? He asked nicely. (since)
10. Mary joined the school theatre. She wanted to increase her circle of friends.
11. I don't know the way. I'll take a taxi.
12. I've forgotten my password. I can't read my email. (so)
13. I got home late. There was a flight delay.(because of)

Exercise 4. Rewrite the sentences, using a suitable connector

1. Sue didn't put on her sweater after the race. She got a cold.
2. I turned the heating on. It was very cold.
3. The lamp didn't work. I took it back to the shop.
4. He doesn't drive. Dave always travel by train.
5. You are going by the store on the way home from work. Would you mind picking up some trash bags?

Exercise 5. Choose the correct words in the following text.

(Not So) Merry-Go-Round!

The customers at the funfair were leaving (and/but) the lights were going out. The last two people on dodgem cars paid (and/so) left. The big wheel stopped (for/and) the merry-go-round stopped (as well/not only). The stalls closed down (so/and) the stall-owners went home. At 2 a.m. four nightwatchmen walked round the funfair, (but/so) there was no one to be seen. "I'm fed up walking round," one of them said, ("yet/what) what can we do?" "We can (or/either) play cards (either/or) sit and talk." They were bored, (so/for) there was nothing to do on this quiet warm night. "We can have a ride on the merry-go-round!" one of them cried. "That'll be fun!" Three of them jumped on merry-go-round horses (yet/and) the fourth started the motor. Then he jumped on too (and/but) round they went. They were having the time of their lives, (but/so) suddenly realized there was no one to stop the machine. They weren't rescued till morning (and/but) by then they felt very sick indeed!

Exercise 6. Insert Articles

I just received a postcard from ... Robinsons, a family I met last year. It made me start thinking: When was ... last time I actually sent ... letter or postcard to someone? It's strange, postal service has been part of ... daily life for centuries. And suddenly, within single generation, postal system is on its way to becoming thing of past. These days, ... few people send ... letters. Today, ... email is ... far more common way to communicate with ... friends and family. It's also ... faster and cheaper way to communicate. When I send email to ... friend ... distant country, friend

will receive ... email almost immediately. What's more, I have the ability to attach ... photograph, ... video, or ... MP3. And I don't even have to buy ... expensive stamp. But ... world is changing quickly. In ... decade or two, we might all be using ... totally different kind of technology to communicate.

Exercise 7. Insert Prepositions

1. Many people were attracted ... the shop's special offers.
2. The insurance company has agreed to meet our claim ... full.
3. The course was described suitable complete beginners.
4. ... his return to England, he set about trying to find a job.
5. I didn't think his work was ... to standard so I asked him to do it again.
6. He made a search of the cellar ... the help of a torch.
7. The neighbours were always complaining ... us .. our dog.
8. The shop repaired the clock completely free ... charge.

Exercise 8. Use correct tenses

1. As a teenager, I ... that I ... just young and attractive.
A) felt/was B) had been feeling / was C) will feel /am D) feel / have been
E) had felt / was
2. When Tom entered the room, his mum ... him because he ... hair and a beard. He looked totally different.
A) wasn't recognizing / was growing B) hadn't recognized / grew C) didn't recognize / had grown D) didn't recognize / had been growing E) hadn't recognized / was growing
3. Look at the drunken driver at the end of the street! He ... an accident.
A) has B) is having C) is going to have D) will have E) will be having
4. She invited me to dinner. But it ... two years since I ... to her house. So I lost my way.
A) is / have been B) was / had gone C) is / went D) has been / went E) was / have gone
5. The swimmer ... to be in difficulty, but he ... to reach the shore in the end.
A) seems / manages B) seemed / has managed C) has seemed / managed D) seemed / managed E) was to seem / managed
6. No English teacher ... to the school till nowadays.
A) were appointed B) had been appointed C) was appointed D) has been appointed E) is appointed
7. "The police ... the New York bomber" ... the headline of the newspaper.
A) is catching / is B) catch / was C) catches / was D) has caught / is E) had caught / was
8. When Mrs Stone... to her flat, she ... the call of her mother on the answering machine.
A) returned / saw B) had returned / had seen C) returned / had seen D) returns / has seen E) has returned / sees

9. When we ...at the forest, it ... darker.

A) have arrived / has been getting B) arrive / has been getting C) arrive / is getting D) arrived / was getting E) arrive / has got

10. When she ... home last night, she realized that John ... a beautiful candle-lit dinner for her.

A) had arrived / was preparing B) arrived / was preparing C) was arriving / had prepared D) arrived / had prepared E) arrived / has prepared

11. Orthozanclus, about half an inch long, ... about 505 million years ago during the Cambrian Period.

A) had lived B) has been living C) lived D) is living E) lives

12. The average surface temperature of earth ... more than 1 degree Fahrenheit since 1900.

A) is going to increase B) has increased C) has been increasing D) had increased E) is increasing

Exercise 9. Make necessary transformations

1. They'll blame the failure of the festival on the weather. The failure of the festival the weather.

2. When people speak down to my sister, she hates it. My sister hate ... to like that

3. I know it's dangerous, but I love hang gliding. Dangerous ..., I love hang gliding.

4. I'd prefer you not to stay out so late. I'd ... stay out so late.

5. I don't think it's important how fast we drive, we're going to be late. We're going to be late ... drive.

6. We paid someone to fix the roof for us last summer. Last summer, we

7. You should have spoken to Meg sooner.
spoken to Meg sooner.

8. "You played your music too loud last night," Jan said to Ben angrily. Jan his music too loud the previous night.

Exercise 10. Correct mistakes if any

1. He's the one which has the blue tie on.

2. We like very much the new secretary.

3. Could you tell me how can I get in touch with Mr. Yamamoto?

4. We're not sure he is enough experienced for the position.

5. She's very sick and has been at the hospital for two weeks.

6. We talked during three hours this morning.

7. We're using all the informations we have to make an informed decision.

8. They change often our seats at work.

9. They don't let us to send our clients gifts without getting approval from management first.

10. Do we have some coffee or tea to offer our guests?

Homework 1 Complete the sentences. Use although + a sentence from the box.

I didn't speak the language
he has a very important job
I had never seen her before
we don't like them very much
it was quite cold, the heating was on
I'd met her twice before
we've known each other for a long time]

1. he isn't particularly well-paid.
2. ..., I recognised her from a photograph.
3. She wasn't wearing a coat ...
4. We thought we'd better invite them to the party ...
5. ..., I managed to make myself understood.
6. ..., the room wasn't warm.
7. I didn't recognize her
8. We're not very good friends

Complete the sentences with although/in spite of/because/because of.

1. ... it rained a lot, we enjoyed our holiday.
2. a. .. all our careful plans, a lot of things went wrong.
b. ..we had planned everything carefully, a lot of things went wrong.
3. a. I went home early ... I was feeling unwell.
b. I went to work the next day ... I was still feeling unwell.
4. a. She only accepted the job ... the salary, which was very high.
b. She accepted the job ... the salary, which was rather low.
5. a. I managed to get to sleep ... there was a lot of noise.
b. I couldn't get to sleep .. the noise.

Homework 2. Complete these sentences using a suitable verb.

1. The President has a team of bodyguards to protect him.
2. I didn't have enough time ... the newspaper today.
3. I came home by taxi. I didn't have the energy ...
4. 'Would you like something ...?' 'Yes, please. A cup of coffee.'
5. We need a bag ... these things in.
6. There will be a meeting next week ... the problem.
7. I wish we had enough money ... a new car.
8. I saw Helen at the party but we didn't have a chance ... to each other.
9. I need some new clothes. I haven't got anything nice ...
10. They've just passed their exams. They're having a party ...
11. I can't do all this work alone. I need somebody ... me.

Write sentences with so that

1. I hurried. I didn't want to be late.
2. We wore warm clothes. We didn't want to get cold.
3. The man spoke very slowly. He wanted me to understand what he said.
4. I whispered. I didn't want anybody else to hear our conversation.
5. Please arrive early. We want to be able to start the meeting on time.
6. She locked the door. She didn't want to be disturbed.
7. I slowed down. I wanted the car behind to be able to overtake.

Additional exercise 1. Choose the correct connecting phrase

even though however in order to no sooner not only not only only if under no circumstances

- 1.... are larger cars more expensive, but they also cost a lot to maintain.
- 2.Milk from our factory is tested regularly ... give our customers the best possible quality.
3. ...had we moved in than our neighbours started complaining about the dog.
4. All countries voted in favour of the plan, ... France.
- 5...we knew who the murderer was, we enjoyed most of the film.
- 6...must this door be left open.
7. I should punish you for disobeying, I am prepared to give you another chance.
8. we book today will we get a 50% discount.

Additional exercise 2. Choose the correct phrase

1. The train was delayed *resulting in view of because on account of* bad weather.
2. The event was cancelled *due to therefore because so the fact that* not many tickets were sold.
3. I felt stressed *as a result that's why therefore as* I'd been overworked recently.
4. John went to the acupuncturist *consequently because of due to since* his bad back.
5. Sonia had a bad stomachache and *therefore given that as a result since* I recommended seeing the doctor.
6. *Because Due to In view of Consequently* the teacher's good reputation the yoga classes were always crowded.
7. *In view of Therefore Given that Since* the fact that homeopathy can be very effective for some illnesses it has become increasingly popular.
8. It's amazing I can walk *as a result of given that therefore since* an hour ago I couldn't move.
9. The company was doing badly and *because of consequently on account of seeing as* it closed.
10. *Since Consequently Resulting Therefore* it is your money, you can do what you like with it.

Revision test Underline the correct item

1. For / Since the children are staying at their grandmother's, let's go out for the evening.
2. He was an hour late because / due to he missed the bus.
3. The road is closed as a result / for of an oil spillage.
4. As / Since long as you are here, why don't you stay for lunch?
5. For / As it's raining outside, let's take a taxi.
6. The hotel was fully booked. Therefore, / On the grounds that we stayed at a guest house.
7. I borrowed your pen since / due to you weren't using it.
8. For / Since I don't know the Becks very well, I've decided not to go to their party.
9. I will take a taxi as / due to I don't know the way.
10. Because / Due to the traffic, I arrived at the office late.
11. Tom didn't go to school today because / for he was ill.
12. The football match was cancelled due to / as the pitch was flooded.

THEME 2.9. RELATIVE CLAUSES

Revision

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Q71CTdd1Ahk&ab_channel=BobBaldric

Theoretical background. In Use, units 91-94, Grammarway 4, p. 152-156, New Round up 6 p.89-93

Exercise 1. Write the sentence again, using the word in brackets. The meaning must stay exactly the same

1. She is a very good English speaker. You would think it was her native language. (so)
2. There were so many people in the room that we couldn't move. (such)
3. We missed the film because there was such a lot of traffic. (so)
4. I can't wear this coat in winter. It's not warm enough. (too)
5. When he speaks English, I can't understand what he says. (enough)
6. We lost the match although we were the better team. (despite)
7. In spite of not having eaten for 24 hours, I didn't feel hungry. (even though)
8. Despite her injured foot, she managed to walk to the village. (although)
9. The football match is still going on. (yet)
10. Has Jane got divorced yet? (still)
11. Jack used to have long hair and a beard. (no longer)
12. I was feeling tired. (any longer)
13. I wish I could speak English as well as you do. (like)
14. Both in January and in February, the price of basic foods rose. (as)
15. He had hoped to do better in the examination. (as....as)
16. John is younger than he looks. (as....as)
17. Tom is 16 years old, and so is Fred. (as....as)
20. He was sitting on the beach when the sun rose. (as)

Exercise 2. Use if | but | in spite of | however | as | until

1. He is a great footballer, he prefers to play hockey.
2. I saw Martin I was getting off the bus.
3. We won't know his opinion we get a letter from him.
4. rich you are, you cannot buy love.
5. He wants to buy a BMW the fact that he doesn't have much money.
6. Nobody will like the boy he doesn't become more friendly.

Exercise 3. Indicate the correct position for the words in brackets

1. There was nothing in the book (original)
2. All students should apply to the bursar's office before the end of term. (interested in the grant)
3. There was something about her behaviour. (inexplicable)
4. They gave an explanation which simply served to confuse the jury. (involved)

5. I'm afraid six o'clock is the only appointment. (available)
6. The state of affairs is unlikely to continue for much longer. (present)
7. I'm afraid the person is on holiday at the moment. (responsible for recruitment)
8. They've started having late night parties in the apartment. (opposite)
9. Anyone would be deeply offended by that harrowing documentary. (sensitive)
10. Don't worry about getting receipts, the amounts are very small. (concerned)
11. Make sure you are wearing shoes before you set out. (suitable for a rocky terrain)

Exercise 4. Fill in the blanks choosing between the Infinitive or Gerund of the verb in brackets

1. I wished ... quite fair (be).
2. I expected ... him in the drawing room (find).
3. I enjoyed ... to her talk of her youth (listen).
4. Roger promised ... in (look).
5. I wanted ... him up (cheer).
6. She didn't mind ... the problem again (discuss).
7. He didn't hesitate ... such methods (employ).
8. We arranged ... (meet).
9. She couldn't resist ... such a lovely hat (buy).
10. Last week you mentioned ... him in the park (meet).
11. We can't afford ... our time (waste).
12. He sat there sullenly and refused ... (answer).
13. He stopped ... and went into the bathroom (whistle).
14. You certainly mustn't miss ... this wonderful film (see).
15. He enjoyed ... (to need).
16. Willy began ... softly (to whistle).
17. In my experience most people mind ... at (to laugh).
18. I don't suppose your wife wants ... with me now (to bother).
19. I knew that Charles had regretted ... me (to invite).
20. He pretended ... when his mother came into his room to look at him (to sleep).
21. He pretended not ... as if the compliment were purely formal (to hear).
22. He prefers ... by the name of John Brown (to know).
23. I don't like ... with (to interfere).
24. I set about ... all the names from the diary (to erase).
25. Bob asked ... to a room where he could wash and change his clothes (to show).

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=j25CFx-4g0I&ab_channel=Arnel%27sEverydayEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ftZr1_Ny8L8&ab_channel=InsightstoEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GZqxSz9Swlc&ab_channel=FlyWayEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=bpYTihB4bqc&t=8s&ab_channel=BCLearningEnglish

Exercise 1. Make one sentence from two. Use who/that/which

1. A girl was injured in the accident. She is now in hospital. The girl who was injured in the accident is now in hospital.

2. A man answered the phone. He told me you were away.
3. A waitress served us. She was very impolite and impatient.
4. A building was destroyed in the fire. It has now been rebuilt.
5. Some people were arrested. They have now been released.
6. A bus goes to the airport. It runs every half hour.

Exercise 2. In some of these sentences you don't need who or that. If you don't need these words, put them in brackets like this: (who) (that)

1. The woman who lives next door is a doctor. ('who' is necessary in this sentence)
2. Have you found the keys (that) you lost. (in this sentence you don't need 'that')
3. The people who we met at the party were very friendly.
4. The people who work in the office are very friendly.
5. The people who I talked to were very friendly.
6. What have you done with the money that I gave you?
7. What happened to the money that was on the table? Did you take it?
8. It was an awful film. It was the worst film that I've ever seen.
9. It was an awful experience. It was the worst thing that has ever happened to me.

Exercise 3. Complete these sentences using a relative clause with a preposition

we went to a party last night
 you can rely on George
 we were invited to a wedding
 I work with a number of people
 I applied for a job
 you told me about a hotel
 you were looking for some keys
 I saw you with a man

1. Are these the keys *you were looking for*?
2. Unfortunately we couldn't go to the wedding ...
3. I enjoy my job. I like the people ...
4. What's the name of that hotel ...?
5. The party ... wasn't very enjoyable.
6. I didn't get the job ...
7. George is a good person to know. He's somebody ...
8. Who was that man ... in the restaurant?

Exercise 4 Put in that or what. If the sentence is complete with or without that, write (that)--in brackets

1. I gave her all the money *that I had*.

2. They give their children everything ... they want.
3. Tell me ... you want and I'll try to get it for you.
4. Why do you blame me for everything ... goes wrong?
5. I won't be able to do much but I'll do the best ... I can.
6. I can only lend you ten pounds. It's all ... I've got.
7. I don't agree with ... you've just said.
8. I don't trust him. I don't believe anything ... he says.

Exercise 5. Complete each sentence using who/whom/whose/where

1. What's the name of the man ... car you borrowed?
2. A cemetery is a place ... people are buried.
3. A pacifist is a person ... believes that all wars are wrong.
4. An orphan is a child ... parents are dead.
5. The place ... we spent our holidays was really beautiful.
6. This school is only for children ... first language is not English.
7. I don't know the name of the woman to ... I spoke on the phone.

Exercise 6. Insert Articles

A: Have you ever thought about buying ... electric car? With ... price of gas at more than \$4.00 ... gallon, it's starting to look like ... very good option for people trying to save ... money. B: Yes, I have. In fact, I've been doing ... little research into ... electric cars recently. I went to ... car dealer ... last week and test-drove ... couple of electric cars just to get ... feeling for what was out there. A: So do you think they are ... good choice for ... person like me who thinks ... price of gas has gotten ... bit out of control? B: That's ... hard question to answer. For example, ... first car I tried was amazing, but I almost had ... heart attack when I saw ... price. And ... second car I tested was ... inexpensive model, but it was ... relatively slow car, and ... battery was too small. You could only drive ... car for ... few hours before you had to recharge. And with ... few public charging stations, that's not ... easy thing to do.

Exercise 7. Insert Prepositions

1. I think I'd rather have coffee ... of tea.
2. ...the danger, Paul ran back into the burning house
- 3....fire, smash the glass and push the emergency button.
4. I would like to thank you everybody who was rescued.
5. ... you, nobody else knows that I have escaped.
- 6.... Steve, he believes that we should stay where we are.
7. Jim managed to climb the house the ladder he found.
- 8..... the rain, the match was postponed.
- 9.... the timetable, the next train is due in two hours.

Exercise 8. Use correct tenses

1. It seems that somebody ... to my father before the meeting, complaining that I ... late for school four times last week.

A) wrote / would be B) has written / have been C) writes / was D) wrote / was E) would write / was being

2. By this time tomorrow, Annie ... through space for nineteen hours.

A) will fly B) will be flying C) is going to fly D) flies E) will have been flying

3. When the article arrived, the editor ... the first sentence and then ... to publish it.

A) had read / refused B) was reading / refused C) read / refused D) read / had refused E) read / refuses

4. It ... a nice day; therefore, we went swimming.

A) was B) had been C) has been D) used to be E) would be

5. Mr Porter ... to clip the bushes in front of his house when his son Don ... around the corner of the garden.

A) has begun / comes B) begins / has come C) had begun / came D) began / was coming E) was to begin / had come

6. When he ... her as a cheater, she ... about him to the headmaster.

A) had called / was complaining B) called / had complained C) has called / complains D) called / complained E) has called / will be complaining

7. Ever since 1905, when Albert Einstein ... his special theory of relativity to the world, the speed of light ... a special status in the minds of physicists.

A) has revealed / has B) revealed / had had C) had revealed / had D) revealed / has had E) has revealed / has had

8. How bad that game is! I'm sure our team ... in this match.

A) will have been eaten B) is beaten C) is being beaten D) will be beaten E) has been beaten

9. When Darwin ... the theory of evolution through natural selection years ago, the scientists of the day ... over it fiercely.

A) introduced / were arguing B) introduced / had been arguing C) introduced / had argued D) had introduced / were arguing E) introduced / argued

10. The financial instability which ... around with depressing frequency in the past two decades ... weakening the economic system.

A) has been coming / led to B) has come / has led to C) came / leads to D) had come / led to E) comes / will lead to

11. Things have certainly changed; there ... lots of small old houses around here when I ... young.

A) would be / was B) used to be / was C) are / have been D) were / would have been E) had been / had been

12. A: Where is Annie? B: She ... at the library for her English test on Wednesday. In fact, she ... for the test every day for the last week.

A) has been studying / reviewed B) was studying / had studied C) has been / reviewed D) is studying / has been reviewing E) is studying / was reviewing

Exercise 9. Make necessary transformations

1. Many delegates stole pens from the conference room. *Were*
2. Immediately after Bess arrived home, the phone rang. *sooner*
3. If his expensive divorce hadn't happened, Bill would still be a rich man. *For*
4. "You won't get lost along the country lanes if you always have the map open *long*
5. My brother has great ideas all the time. *Comes*
6. If that passing woman hadn't arrived, we would have been completely lost. *For*
7. If I lose this job, nobody will let me forget it. *Live*
8. They'll have to cancel the show if the audience doesn't increase. *Mean*

Exercise 10. Correct mistakes if any

1. I called Kate this morning and she told me she'll call me back in a half an hour.
2. We regularly conduct emergency drills for ensuring that we are prepared for an emergency.
3. Brad is 32 now. He completes 33 years in October.
4. These are the most cheap gas prices I have seen in my life.
5. Yesterday, I must sent a very important email to a client.
6. We knew there was a gas leak because it smelled really badly inside the house.
7. My parents always told me that it's important being positive.
8. For the economy, we haven't been able to hire any new people.
9. He says that he's been really tired since several weeks ago.
10. A friend of us is going to pick us up at the airport.
11. I've worked like a waiter in the past, but I wouldn't want to do it again.
12. To sleep at work is acceptable in some cultures.
13. Because these problems, we shouldn't move forward with this proposal right now.
14. I'm going to take my lunch break and then to make some phone calls.
15. I've asked everyone to help me with my college admissions essay. Even I asked someone I met on the bus.

Homework 1. Make one sentence from two. Use the sentence in brackets to make a relative clause. Sometimes the clause goes in the middle of the sentence, sometimes at the end. You will need to use who(m)/whose/which/where

1. Ann is very friendly. (She lives next door.) Ann, who lives next door, is very friendly.
2. We stayed at the Grand Hotel. (Ann recommended it to us.) We stayed at the Grand Hotel, which Ann recommended to us.
3. We went to Sandra's party. (We enjoyed it very much.) We went to Sandra's party ...
4. I went to see the doctor. (He told me to rest for a few days.) ...
5. John is one of my closest friends. (I have known him for a very long time.) John ...
6. Sheila is away from home a lot. (Her job involves a lot of travelling.).
7. The new stadium will be opened next month. (It can hold 90,000 people).
8. We often go to visit our friends in Bristol. (It is only 30 miles away.) .
9. Glasgow is the largest city in Scotland. (My brother lives there.) ...

Read the information and complete the sentences. Use a relative clause. Sometimes the clause tells us which thing or person; sometimes it only gives us extra information. Use commas where necessary

1. There's a woman living next door. She's a doctor.
2. I've got a brother called Jim. He lives in London. He's a doctor.
3. There was a strike at the car factory. It lasted ten days. It is now over.
4. I was looking for a book this morning. I've found it now.
5. London was once the largest city in the world, but the population is now falling.
6. A job was advertised. A lot of people applied for it. Few of them had the necessary qualifications.
7. Margaret has a son. She showed me a photograph of him. He's a policeman.

Homework 2. Fill in the correct relative pronouns or adverbs. Put commas where necessary. Write D (for defining), ND (for non-defining) and say whether the relative pronouns can be omitted or not

1. The food ... I like best is spaghetti.
2. Fred, .. mother lives in Edinburgh, has gone to Scotland.
3. My home town ... is near Birmingham is very small.
4. His uncle ... is a millionaire owns a house in the Bahamas.
5. The dog ... Robert bought has just had six puppies.
6. The actor ... I admire the most is Robert De Niro.
7. Emma ... sister is an actress is going on holiday to Hollywood.
8. The country .. my father was born is in South America.
9. The book ... I'm reading is about China.
10. This jumper ... I bought in Ireland is pure wool.

Join the sentences

1. My uncle has a large collection of antiques. Many of them are valuable.
2. I have ten cousins. None of them are girls.
3. There are some beautiful houses in the town. Some of them are more than two hundred years old.
4. She met lots of new people at the party. A few of them commented on her gorgeous dress.

5. Ted planted lots of new rose bushes in his garden. Very few of them survived the cold winter.
6. The supermarket has thirty employees. Most of them work part-time.
7. She has a number of earrings. Some of them are silver-plated.
- 8 I have three brothers. All of them are single.

Additional exercise 1. Insert necessary words

What do you do 1) *when* you need to leave yourself a reminder to do something? Maybe you reach for a 'sticky note'! Sticky notes were the clever idea of Art Fry and Spencer Silver, two inventors 2) .. .worked for the company 3M. In 1968, Silver developed a glue 3) ... stuck to objects, but could be easily lifted off again. For years, Silver's glue was not put to use. Then, in 1974, Fry, 4), ... job was to develop new products at 3M, used Silver's glue to make the first sticky note. Fry got the idea from his own habit of using small pieces of paper to mark the page 5)... he wanted to take a break from reading a book. The pieces of paper kept falling out, but with Silver's glue they stayed in place and could be lifted off without damaging the page. Success! Fry took his idea to the executives at 3M, all of 6) loved it! Today, there are very few offices in the world 7)... you won't find sticky notes!

Additional exercise 2. Mark the relative pronouns you could omit in these sentences

1. The girl that we were talking to loves snakes.
2. Is that the woman who threw acid at the horses?
3. The book which I bought yesterday is about training dogs.
4. My friend Simon is the boy whose mother is a professor of zoology.
5. Do you know the people who made so much noise at the party last night?
6. Have you seen the bag where I keep my football kit?

Revision test

Fill in each gap with one of the words in the box . • except • apart • besides • but for • instead • even if • even so • even though • only if • so • but • and • or both .. and not only ... but also • either .. or • neither ... nor • whether ... or

1. If you don't want orange juice, I can make you a cup of tea ...
- 2 ... Sam's last-minute goal, we would have lost the match.
3. I like all green vegetables ... from broccoli and spinach.
4. Everyone was silent ... for Claire who was laughing.
5. ...me, George and Alex will be there.
- 6....I don't really like coffee, I sometimes drink it with my friends.
7. I will go to the concert, you come too.
8. Georgia's been to Istanbul three times on holiday... , she's happy to go there again.
9.you hurry, you'll still be late.

10. I have to finish writing my essay, ... I can't go out tonight.
11. Hurry up we'll be late!
12. I love playing football, I find it really boring to watch it on TV.
13. My favourite cuisines are Thai Greek.
14. He's so lucky! did he get a promotion, he got a brand-new car!
15. I don't know ... to buy this dress ... not.
16. I've lived in ... London ... New York.
17. I have ... the time the energy to argue with you.
18. You can choose ... the bracelet the necklace, but not both.

THEME 2.10. QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Revision

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=QICgIltwsWs&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

Theoretical background. In Use, Units 48-51, Grammarway 4, pp. Unit 12, New Round Up 6, Unit 12

Exercise 1. This exercise tests your understanding of the meaning and rules of relative clauses. Choose the correct answer

Which relative pronoun is used for subject nouns and pronouns that refer to people? Whose. Who. Whom

TRUE or FALSE: We can use that for defining relative clauses.

TRUE or FALSE: Defining relative clauses provide essential information to the noun and entire sentence.

Which relative pronoun is used for defining relative clauses that refer to objects, ideas, or animals? Who. That. Which

Relative clauses are a type of ... clause.

dependent

coordinating

independent

Exercise 2. Relative Pronouns Use the relative pronouns in the box to complete the sentences who(m) that which where when whose

1. The doctor ... examined the child was very gentle. 2. I live in Canada, ... is a densely populated country. 3. Lee teaches a class of students ... native language is not English. 4. Yesterday, I ran into an old friend ... I hadn't seen for years. 5. Dan says he will always remember the day ... his parents first bought him a bike for his birthday. 6. That's the drawer ... I keep my jewellery. 7. The town ... I used to live in was not very big. 8. The people ... house I am staying at are very kind to me. 9. Is this store ... you said you bought the fishing equipment? 10. Here is the place ... grandpa always used to talk about. 11. I am in need of a coat ... will keep me warm. 12. We don't have a big enough room in ... we can apply sample tests. 13. Why don't you consult someone ... has experienced the same troubles? 14. The woman ... husband is a football player always complains about the stains ... never come off easily. 15. Here is a big thank you to all ... contributed to this wonderful website. 16. What I'm now going to tell you is something ... you'll never forget in your life. 17. The severe drought ... occurred last summer ruined the crop. 18. The voters were overwhelmingly against the candidate ... proposals called for higher taxes.

Exercise 3. Change each of the singular nouns below into plural nouns

1. Baby, body, monkey, party, dictionary, city

2. Calf, hoof, elf, dwarf, thief, loaf
3. Tooth, child, man, person, foot, louse
4. Potato, goose, tomato, house
5. Cherry, moose, deer, ox, mosquito
6. Sheep, hero, box

Change the following sentences to singular

1. Paws are to cats as feet are to humans
2. Keys are to doors as passwords are to computers
3. Girls are to boys as women are to men
4. Geese are to flocks as dogs are to packs.

Exercise 4. Fill in the gaps with the comparative or superlative forms of the adjectives in brackets to complete the following sentences in English

1. Sharks are ... than lions. (dangerous)
2. William Shakespeare is ... than Christopher Marlowe. (famous)
3. Henry is ... than his sister. (absent-minded)
4. Tom is ... than David. (selfish)
5. He is ... than he used to be last year. (fat)
6. Andrew seems to be ... than he was two months ago. (slim)
7. Walt is ... nowadays than he used to be when he was ... (impatient / young)
8. Our town is ... than Manchester. (attractive)
9. Tom is ... than his elder brother. (impulsive)
10. This poem is ... than any other poem I've read. (pathetic)
11. Your house is ... than mine. (beautiful)
12. His room is ... than yours. (dark)
13. I think that English films are ... than American ones. (interesting)
14. George runs ... than Jim. (fast)
15. The living conditions are ... than they used to be. (bad)
16. Today Father is ... than usual. (irritated)
17. Exercise 16 is ... than exercise 15. (easy)
18. "Prevention is ... than cure". (good)
19. Your argumentation is ... than Robert's. (convincing)
20. At home, Mother is always ... than Father. (busy)

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=AjITe0_OazY&ab_channel=LearnEasylearnEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=uPACgfgVVy4&ab_channel=EnglishwithLucy

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9tNdmy4viic&ab_channel=Kendra%27sLanguageSchool

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=j9b1CNN_rFU&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vFcCO4j_6Jk&ab_channel=LearnEnglishwithHarry

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zNUhMBmPbTU&ab_channel=EnglishwithLucy

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jY46m3rhxwk&ab_channel=EnglishwithRonnie%27sEnglishLessons4UwithengVid

Exercise 1. Put the words in brackets in the correct order. All the sentences are questions.

1. (when/was/built/this house) When was this house built?
2. (how/cheese/is/made)
3. (when/invented /the computer/was)
4. (why/Sue/working/ isn't/today)
5. (what time/coming/your friends/are)
6. (why/was/cancelled/the concert)
7. (where/your mother/was/born)
8. (why/you/to the party/didn't/come)
9. (how/the accident/did/happen)
10. (why/this machine/doesn't/work)

Exercise 2. Make a new sentence from the question in brackets

1. (Where has Tom gone?) Do you know where Tom has gone?
2. (Where is the post office?) Could you tell me where ...
3. (What's the time?) I wonder ...
4. (What does this word mean?) I want to know ...
5. (What time did they leave?) Do you know ...
6. (Is Sue going out tonight?) I don't know ...
7. (Where does Carol live?) Have you any idea ...
8. (Where did I park the car?) I can't remember ...
9. (Is there a bank near here?) Can you tell me ...
10. (What do you want?) Tell me ...
11. (Why didn't Kay come to the party?) I don't know ...
12. (Do you have to pay to park here?) Do you know ...
13. (Who is that woman?) I've no idea ...
14. (Did Ann receive my letter?) Do you know ...
15. (How far is it to the airport?) Can you tell me ...

Exercise 3. You never agree with Sue. Answer in the way shown

1. I'm hungry. Are you? I'm not.
2. I'm not tired.
3. I like football.
4. I didn't enjoy the film.
5. I've never been to South America.
6. I thought the exam was quite easy.

Exercise 4. Put a question tag on the end of these sentences

1. Tom won't be late, will he? No, he's never late.
2. You're tired, ...? Yes, a little.
3. You've got a camera, ... Yes, why? Do you want to borrow it?

4. You weren't listening, ...? Yes, I was!
5. Sue doesn't know Ann, ... ? No, they've never met.
6. Jack's on holiday, ...? Yes, he's in Portugal.
7. Ann's applied for the job, ... ? Yes, but she won't get it.
8. You can speak German, ... ? Yes, but not very fluently.
9. He won't mind if I use his phone, .. ? No, of course he won't.
10. There are a lot of people here, ... ? Yes, more than I expected.
11. Let's go out tonight, ... ? Yes, let's.
12. This isn't very interesting, ... ? No, not very.
13. I'm too impatient, ... ? Yes, you are sometimes.
14. You wouldn't tell anyone ... ? No, of course not.
15. Listen, ... ? OK, I'm listening.
16. I shouldn't have lost my temper, ... ? No, but never mind.
17. Don't drop that vase, ... ? No, don't worry.
18. He'd never met her before, ... ? No, that was the first time.

Exercise 5. Write questions to which the words in bold are the answers

1. Josh left the window **open**.
2. **Keith's** new house is very big.
3. Chris **saved** a little girl.
4. **Terry** drove a tractor.
5. Jenny likes **Spain**.
6. Jane sent **Paul** a letter.
7. Jack shouted at **Jim**.
8. The whale lives in the **ocean**.
9. Jane saw the **postman**.
10. Jack has read the **newspaper**.
11. **Shakespeare** wrote Hamlet.
12. Maria opened the **window**.
13. Sally **hates** strawberries.
14. Ann's **new** mobile phone is very expensive.

Exercise 6. Insert Articles

1.Second World war ended in 1945.
2. Do you know ... people who live next door.
3. Are you interested in ... art or ... architecture.
4. Don't stay in that hotel. beds are very uncomfortable.
5. I hate ... violence.
6. Ken's brother is in ... prison for robbery.
7. What time do your children finish ... school?
8. The other day the fire brigade had to go to ... prison to put out the fire.
9. On ... way to London we passed through a small village with ---...old church. We stopped to visit ... church. It was a beautiful building.

10. John himself doesn't go to ... church.
11. After ... work Ann usually goes home.
12. When Ann was ill, we went to ... hospital to visit her.
13. The British Prime Minister lives in ... Downing Street 10.
14. ...Tate Gallery is the main modern art museum in London.
15. Have you ever visited ... Tower of London ?
16. Do you know ... time ? Yes, ... clock in the hall has just struck nine.
17. I am on ... night duty. When you go to ... bed, I go to ... work.

Exercise 7. Insert Prepositions

1. Julie and I met in the shopping mall... chance.
2. It will take you ... least an hour to get here.
3. You can't go on a holiday on your own. It's ... of the question.
4. I didn't break the vase ... purpose. It was an accident.
5. The team received the trophy ... the end of the match.
6. We have to pay our bills ... June at the latest.
7. Erica fell ... love with the new boy from next door.
8. Is all of this furniture sale ?
9. This bus always leaves ...the right time.
10. I'm sorry. I opened the letter ... mistake.
11. I'm leaving this job good and I am not coming back.
12. In this hotel we don't need to pay ... advance
13. Do you often travel ... business ?
14. Those trousers you have on look really ... of date.
15. It was the first time I spoke ... public. But everything went well.

Exercise 8. Use correct tenses

1. It was only after she ... English that she ... to make some foreign friends.
A) learnt / had started B) had learnt / started C) learnt / would start D) was learning / started E) learns / has started
2. For decades, researchers ... to wrest predictions from string theory, the leading candidate for a more fundamental understanding of the universe.
A) tried B) were trying C) have tried D) try E) had tried
3. We ... that this picture ... worth at least 500 dollars.
A) have estimated / was B) have estimated / is C) will estimate / will be D) are estimating / is E) estimated / was
4. Next weekend, I ... my proficiency exam, so I ... more or less 300 questions so far.
A) am going to have / finished B) am having / will have finished C) am to have / finish D) am having / will finish E) will have / have finished
5. Jack ... with his parents this evening when his girlfriend from New York telephoned to let him know that she ... with someone else.

A) was talking / had engaged B) had been talking / engaged C) talked / engaged D) had talked / had engaged E) was talking / had been engaging

6. When Sakura .. at the theatre, Shannon was really angry because he ... for her for more than an hour.

A) had arrived / was waiting B) arrived / was waiting C) had been arriving / was waiting D) was arriving / waited E) arrived / had been waiting

7. He ... his boss that he ... back after his vacation.

A) doesn't tell / hasn't come B) won't tell / won't have come C) isn't telling / doesn't come D) hasn't told / won't be coming E) didn't tell / hadn't come

8. By the time Richard ... from the army, he ... involved in three separate riots.

A) retires / would be B) retired / had been C) has retired / was D) retired / will be E) had retired / had been

9. Scientists ... that some artificial photosynthesis ... possible.

A) will hope / is B) are hoping / will have been C) hoped / was D) hoped / had been E) hope / will be

10. In Asia, for many centuries, physicians ... foot massage as an aid to the treatment of major health problems.

A) have used B) are using C) were using D) had been using E) used

11. By the time we ... our preparations for the congress, most of the participants... at the hall.

A) have finished / had arrived B) will have finished / arrive C) finished / have arrived D) finished / had arrived E) finish / would arrive

Exercise 9. Make necessary transformations

1. None of the phones were left when we got to the shop. *Time*.

2. I didn't know it was Carl until he took off his hat *when*

3. Don't waste your time asking Bryan to come with us. *Worth*

4. Perhaps John heard the story from Pippa. *Have*

5. Until they fire me as manager here, I'll run the company my way. *Long*

6. It's not possible that you saw Mary last night, she was with us! *Have*

7. The beach was fun even though it was too cold. *fact*

Exercise 10. Correct mistakes if any

1. I would like to remember everyone that Mr. Lewis, a prospective client, will be visiting the office next Tuesday. He'll be in the office since 9 a.m. until about noon. I will appreciate it if everyone could dress in business professional attire during his visit. We want to make sure everyone makeS a good impression.

2. I called to Sandra's office and talked to her secretary. She said me that Sandra wasn't in the office, but that she would be back at 3 p.m. in the afternoon. Do you wish me to call her again this afternoon to discuss about the new proposal?

3. Thanks for inviting me to the event. Would you mind to send me the address so I can get directions? Thanks – I'm looking forward to see you.

4. Thanks for send me the potential travel itineraries. It doesn't mind to me which flight I take. Regards hotels, let's choose the hotel in the city center. I'll like to be close to where the convention is being held.

5. I am writing regarding to order number CS4789. It seems that the amount due is unusual high. Please see the attach copy of the invoice. Could you please to review it and ensure the amount is correct?

Homework 1 Read the statements. Write subject or object questions

1) Something is making a strange noise. 2) One of the boys will play in goal. 3) Pete has got something in his bag. 4) Marcus gave you something to eat. 5) Something is missing from the cupboard. 6) Jess saw somebody in the park. 7) I'd like one of those pizzas. 8) Somebody phoned Sally last night.

Write the missing questions. Think where to place the prepositions – the style is informal

1. Keira went to Spain with her sister? Her sister.
2. They stayed in a hotel for two weeks. ? Two weeks.
3. They were unhappy about their room.? Their room.
4. They complained to the hotel manager.? The hotel manager.
5. He told his son off for not tidying his room..? Not tidying his room.

Give a question for the underlined words

1. The balls cost one pound. 2. Predators depend on animals. 3. We attend English classes three times a week. 4. The new manager stayed three months in England. 5. The Tower of London was built in 1066. 6. Africans wait in the woods for the right moment. 7. The e-mail warned about terrible viruses infecting computers. 8. Money should be spent on HIV/Aids. 9. The new Euro coins came into circulation in January. 10. That is my mother's new coat. 11. Jane crosses the border twice a month. 12. Only six per cent of women work as teachers. 13. The law did all the forbidding. 14. I've been married for twenty years. 15. Edward Lu met his fiancée after Christmas. 16. This dictionary cost fifty dollars ten years ago.

Homework 2 Read the situations and write sentences with questions tags. In each situation, you are asking your friend to agree with you

1. You and your friend have just eaten at an expensive restaurant. You really enjoyed your meal. What do you say? (delicious)
2. You and your friend need to get to the city centre. You don't want to walk. What do you say to your friend? (take the bus)
3. You're taking a walk in the forest. Your friend walks very fast. What do you say? (slowly)
4. You are looking at a resort in a holiday brochure. You don't like it, though. What do you say to your friend? (not/look nice)
5. You want to go to the cinema. Your friend is still doing the household chores. What do you say? (not/finish/chores)

Fill in the correct questions tags and short answers

1. A: She likes chocolate ice cream, ... ? B: No, . . . She prefers vanilla. 2 A: You've read Oliver Twist, ? B: Yes, It's very interesting. 3 A: I'm not too early, ... ? B: No, The other guests will be arriving soon. 4 A: Ann did the ironing,. .. ? B: Yes,..... She also did the washing-up. 5 A: You aren't from Barcelona, ... ? B: No, ." I'm from Madrid. 6 A: You will be travelling tomorrow, ... ? B: Yes, My plane leaves at 2 o'clock. 7 A: They've moved house, ... ? B: Yes, They live in the suburbs now. 8 A: You drive to work every morning, ... ? B: Yes, ... It takes me half an hour to get to the office.

Give a question for the underlined words

1. People have been seeing strange objects in the sky for centuries. 2. She is said to be 115 years old. 3. This system has been running for two years. 4. Sally went to this school last year. 5. It took 6 months to find her disease. 6. A hot, milky drink may help you relax. 7. Reaction times were 30% slower. 8. There are eight denominations of euro coins. 9. Tourists have chosen new destinations. 10. Stephen was down on his right knee. 11. The child wants to go to the zoo. 12. The child wants to go to the zoo. 13. The child wants to go to the zoo. 14. His being there now was owing to some funny accident. 15. Mrs Pitts had been trying to phone them every five minutes since 11.00 a.m. 16. I spilt Peter's coffee on Mr Manson's suit.

Additional exercise 1. Read these sentences that contain reported questions. Each sentence has an extra word. Write the extra word in the space

1. I would really love to know what my mother have said to him.
2. The old lady did asked me where the bank was.
3. They asked me what was I was doing.
4. I asked my uncle if he has ever went to Mexico.
5. My mother has asked me if I wanted to eat dinner or not.
6. We wondered that if somebody was going to call the police eventually.
7. David asked to me where I usually park my car in the morning.
8. I wanted to know if I must had to do the composition for Tuesday or Wednesday.

Additional exercise 2. Write indirect questions. Use the phrases in the box

I wonder... I'd like to know... Could you tell me...? Can you tell me...? Have you any idea? Can I ask...? Do you know...? Would you mind telling me...?

1. Who broke that window?
2. What's your name?
3. Where do you live?
4. Where is the ticket office?
5. Would you be willing to answer some questions?
6. Will you be eating at home this evening?

7. What time do you plan to arrive?
8. Why are you laughing?

Revision test Complete the questions

1. ... your friend a scientist? – No, he's an artist.
2. Núria live in Valencia? – No, she lives in Barcelona.
3. When you get home? – I got home yesterday.
4. What time you get up? – I get up at 6.00.
5. the children go to the park? – Yes, they went there after school.
6. Are going to the office? – No, I'm going home.
7. you speak Korean? – Just a little.
8. did you grow up? – I grew up in Addis Ababa.

THEME 2.11. EMPHATIC STRUCTURES. EXCLAMATIONS

Revision https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vXWK1-L41f0&ab_channel=ScratchGarden

Theoretical background. Grammarway 4, p.118-123, Round Up 6, Unit 10

Exercise 1 Reconstruct the questions and give answers

- 1 ... is the capital of England? A Edinburgh B Cardiff C London
- 2 ... countries are in the United Kingdom? A Two B Four C Seven
- 3 ... is Bonfire Night celebrated? A November 5th B April 5th C June 5th
- 4 ... is the author of the Harry Potter books? A JK Rowling B JR Downing C William Shakespeare
- 5 ... were the Beatles from? A York B Manchester C Liverpool
- 6 ... is a traditional English takeaway meal? A Spaghetti B Fish and chips C Chicken

Exercise 2. Read the situations and write sentences with questions tags. In each situation, you are asking the person to agree with you

1. You and your friend have just come from a concert. You really enjoyed the music. What do you say to your friend? (fantastic).
2. There is a new film playing at the cinema and you fancy going. You want your friend to come with you. What do you say to your friend? (go/cinema) Let's ...
3. You are studying in your room. Your little brother is making too much noise and you can't concentrate. What do you say to him? (quiet) Be ...
4. You want to go shopping with your sister. She is still doing her homework. What do you say to her? (not/finish/homework)

Exercise 3. Rephrase the following sentences

1. "No, I won't tell you where I hid the money," the robber said to the police. *refused* The robber ... where he had hidden the money.
2. It's a pity I didn't bring my guitar to the party. *wish* I ... my guitar to the party.
3. They are loading luggage onto the plane. being *Luggage...* onto the plane.
4. "Don't dive into the deep end of the pool," the lifeguard said to them. *warned* The lifeguard ... into the deep end of the pool.
5. I don't want to go camping this weekend. *rather* I... this weekend.
6. The ferry has many passengers. *great* *There* ... of passengers on the ferry.
7. Nobody could solve the puzzle. *anybody* There

Exercise 4. Insert used to or would or both

1. We to go swimming every weekend.

2. There be a coffee shop in that corner.
3. She spend hours talking to herself.
4. When I was a kid, I ... swim a lot.
5. There was no chance that my letter ... arrive in time.
6. On that train, he first met the woman he ... one day marry.
7. I wish you... not get angry so easily.
8. She asked if I ... like some advice.
9. He ... smoke.
10. I ... like football, but now I don't.
11. You ... hate him, didn't you?
12. I always ... be afraid of spiders.

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=b0fmClDbrVI&t=38s&ab_channel=SunriseDetails

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=P7dcdEoNA_E&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ZfkKD1pUHiU&ab_channel=EnglishWithFernando

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=RIzCHmWY9WA&ab_channel=SerhiSydorenko

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=G7a31kIpzI0&ab_channel=SeedLearning

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=G7a31kIpzI0&ab_channel=SeedLearning

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Y6waRU0Cft0&ab_channel=LearnBetterEnglish

Exercise 1. Rewrite the following, putting emphasis on every part of the sentences

1. Rachael visited the museum in the morning.
2. Our top journalist interviewed the celebrity in London.
3. Steve wrote a detective novel four years ago.
4. The Smiths installed a burglar alarm last month.
5. Greg eats an omelette on Sunday mornings.
6. Who sang that beautiful song?
7. Where did I leave my car keys?
8. Robert enjoyed hiking even though it was rainy.
9. Have another cup of tea.
10. James Cameron directed the film Avatar.
11. The digital camera was first sold in Japan.
12. Wait a minute; I'm nearly ready.

Exercise 2. Rewrite the sentences using emphatic constructions, starting with the words given

1. Kim broke the computer. It was Kim who...
2. Hurry up. Do
3. Why did they close the amusement park? Why ever.....
4. She needs a haircut. What
5. He promised to email her. He did ...
6. When did you move house? When was

... 7. What are you cooking? Whatever 8. I told you to be careful. I did ...
9. Jimmy turned the TV on. It was 10. Stay a little longer. Do ..

Exercise 3. Open the brackets

Under no circumstances 1) (you/should/tell) any journalists about our tactics for the cup final and in no way 2) (you/must/give) the other team any clues about which players we will choose to start the game. Not until after the game 3) (you/will/be able to) talk to reporters. Only in this way 4) (our plan/will/be) a success. If you all follow these orders, not only 5) (we/will/have) a good chance of victory on Saturday, but you will also be given some time off after the game.

Exercise 4. Paraphrase the sentence

1. I don't need a fork, I need a spoon. It is not a fork... 2. He's not playing football, he's playing rugby. 3. Laura isn't a nurse, Sarah is. 4. I don't like apples, I like oranges. 5. I don't study Spanish, I study Italian. 6. He didn't write a novel, he wrote a short story. 7. I didn't buy a table, I bought a chair. 8. They don't want an oven, they want a microwave.

Exercise 5. Look at the following text and write inverted sentences

George Crum invented crisps in 1853. Crum worked as a chef in a restaurant in Saratoga Springs, New York. Crum *rarely* got complaints about his cooking, but one customer was never happy with the food he received. Crum's crisps were *on no occasion* good enough for him. The crisps were *not only* too oily *but also* they were not salty enough. To make the customer happy, Crum tried something new. He sliced the potatoes as thinly as possible, fried them, and added salt. The customer had *no sooner* tried the new snack *than* Crum knew it was something important. Crum and the customer had *never* been so happy *before!* These days, crisps are one of the most popular snack foods in the world.

Exercise 6. Insert Articles

There has never been ... more exciting time to produce ... new dictionary. Everything is changing and expanding: ... English language itself, ... technology that helps us to describe it, and ... needs and goals of those learning and teaching ... English. ... 1980s saw ... development of ... first large corpora (special collections) of English text.

Another of Macmillan English Dictionary's innovations is that ... two similar but separate editions have been created from ... same database: one for ... learners whose main target variety is ... American English, ... other for learners of ... British English. ... differences are small but significant.

Macmillan English Dictionary is ... product of good linguistic ... data and high-quality ... people. It has been ... unique privilege to work with such ... talented and creative team, and I would like to thank ... team for producing

such ... excellent book. I hope you enjoy ... results of...our hard work and find ... dictionary ... pleasure to use.

Exercise 7. Insert Prepositions

1. We expect our cousins to arrive ... 3:00 this afternoon.
2. We expect our cousins to arrive ... Monday.
3. We expect our cousins to arrive ... the next hour.
4. We expect our cousins to arrive ... four o'clock. (approximately)
5. We expect our cousins to arrive ... Easter.
6. We expect our cousins to arrive ... an hour.
7. We expect our cousins to arrive ... May.
8. We expect our cousins to arrive ... the next fifteen minutes.
9. We expect our cousins to arrive ... time.
10. We expect our cousins to arrive ... time for dinner.

Exercise 8. Use correct tenses

1. I ... Jerusalem Peace Forest so as to escape from the fear and loathing of the soldiers many times ever since I ... to Israel a year ago.

A) visited / had moved B) will be visiting / move C) have been visiting / will move D) had visited / have moved E) have visited / moved

2. The Bastille Prison, where many important people ... at one time imprisoned, ... today visited by tourists.

A) have been / is B) had been / have been C) were / is D) are / was E) will be / has been

3. Tony is a wonderful singer; his mother tells me that he ... professionally since she was four.

A) has sung B) was singing C) is singing D) has been singing E) sings

4. The full impact of the strike ... till next week, by which time present stocks ...

A) hasn't been felt / will be exhausted B) won't be felt / will have been exhausted C) isn't to be felt / have been exhausted D) won't be felt / is exhausted E) isn't felt / exhausted

5. We moved to Myerson in 1995. At the time of our arrival, the city ... through a period of expansion.

A) went B) will go C) was going D) has gone E) had been going

6. Although he ... not having the talent necessary to become a violinist, he ... practising with great determination.

A) had admitted / would be continuing B) will have admitted / was continuing C) would admit / has continued D) admitted / had continued E) has admitted / continues

7. By the time the English team ... at the summit, both the Japanese and Dutch teams ... up to the Himalayas.

A) arrived / had climbed B) were arriving / climbed C) have been arriving / have climbed D) had arrived / climbed E) arrive / would have climbed

8. The Cambrian ... an important moment in the history of life on earth and a time of radical evolutionary experimentation when many animals first ... in the fossil record.

A) was / had appeared B) has been / will appear C) has been / appears D) is / appeared E) was / appeared

9. Although aspirin ... primarily regarded as a simple pain killer, it ... to prevent heart attacks, too.

A) is / helps B) was / will have helped C) has been / would have helped D) is / was helped E) will be / had helped

10. Until recently, the first European who ... to the New World ... to be Christopher Columbus, who was a famous Italian navigator.

A) had sailed / was believed B) has sailed / is believed C) has sailed / had been believed D) would sail / has been believed E) sailed / had been believed

11. The committee is determined not to leave ... they have finished the project.

A) until B) by the time C) just as D) since E) when

12. Shelly ... her mid-term mark because she ... to her instructor.

A) won't learn / hasn't listened B) hadn't learnt / wouldn't be listening C) can't learn / didn't listen D) couldn't learn / wasn't listening E) wouldn't learn / hadn't listened

Exercise 9. Make necessary transformations

1. Brian was really interested in North American history in his school days. (interest)

2. Darius soon recovered after the operation on his knee and was able to rejoin the team. (made)

3. I always hated pasta when I was a child but now I cook it regularly. (use)

4. It was a mistake not to write the telephone number down. (point) .

5. If Marc hadn't taken up politics, he might have become a famous art historian. (name)

6. This holiday is within our price range, provided we don't go to the expensive restaurants in the tourist centre. (afford)

7. Yesterday I informed my boss in writing that I would be leaving the company. (notice) .

Exercise 10. Correct mistakes if any

1. Have everyone had the chance to review all the informations in the employee handbook? If you need anything clarified, please contact to your manager.

2. I've been working like a freelance software developer since the last few years. After be self-employed for many years, I am very interesting in finding a full-time position with your company.

3. We are pleased to inform that we have started making business with a new client. Starting on February, we'll be handling customer service calls for a cable company in United States. We're very pleased that our company is continuing to grow up.
4. Do you think you would send me some information about shipping options? I'm wondering how can we insure the products arrive soon. We need these items until the end of the month at the latest.
5. Jerry, I'm forwarding you a question from one of our customer. Could you respond him as soon as possible?
6. After careful reviewing your application, we regret informing you that you have not been selected for the position. We thank you for your interest in our company, and we wish you the better of luck with your search.
7. I'm not pretty sure I can end this project by the end of the day. I'd appreciate it if you can help me later this afternoon.
8. Farther to our discussion, we'll be offering full-time positions to our interns. Could we plan to meet in Friday to discuss compensation packages?
9. Regard our year-end celebration, I'm agree that we should hold the event in the city. If I'm not wrong, I think many people complained last year about having to drive so far to the event.

Homework 1. For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to original sentence, but using the words given in bold

Sebastian left the job because of the long working hours. why—The reason why Sebastian left the job was the long working hours.

1. We have to wait here. **THIS**
2. We just need five minutes to fix it. **ALL**
3. Jennifer started the strike. **PERSON**
4. I'm not questioning his dedication. **ISN'T**
5. These men are totally ruthless. **WHAT**
6. I used to live around the corner. **THE PLACE**
7. It was your next-door neighbour who complained. **THE ONE**
8. We inherited everything except the house. **ONLY THING**
9. You know the sales assistant told me exactly the same thing. **THAT'S**
10. I want you to copy this down in your notebooks. **TO DO**
11. First of all, we checked the insurance details. **FIRST THING**
12. The climbers reached the peak at six o'clock. **WAS**
13. We're taking the au-pair with us. **DOING**
14. Before leaving we switched off the power supply. **LAST THING**
15. They moved to Andalucía because of the climate. **REASON**
16. The company has imposed a ban on private e-mails. **HAS DONE**
17. The only thing we want is our money back. **ALL**
18. Our boss told us the news. **IT**

19. I want you to appreciate that it's not my fault. **WHAT**
20. The introduction of stamp duties led to the loss of the American colonies
THAT

Homework 2. Rewrite the replies in these mini-dialogues to make them more emphatic by using suitable structures (cleft sentences, fronting or inversion) to emphasise the underlined items

1. I find that really hard to believe.' 'You look as though you're destroying that rose bush.' 2. 'No, I'm just cutting off the dead flower heads.'
2. 'Are you sure you brought everything with you?' 3. We left the personal stereo behind, that's all.'
3. 'Didn't you own a Volkswagen Golf once?' 'No, my brother owned one.'
4. 'He said the speech would shake them up a bit.' 'And it certainly did shake them up.'
5. 'I thought the car chase and the scene in the airport were brilliant.' 'But the explosion on the jumbo jet was best of all.'
6. 'I think we should try to give them first aid.' 'No, we should wait for the ambulance to arrive.'

Change the following assertive sentences into exclamatory sentences

1. It was a very hot day.
2. She dances very well.
3. He is a very rude man.
4. She looks exhausted.
5. The weather is very nice.
6. That was very interesting.
7. She is very generous.
8. That is a sad state of affairs.
9. It was a nice evening.
10. She is an incredibly strong woman.

Additional exercise 1. Complete the sentences using the words in brackets

1. We can go on with the plan only if you agree. (can) Only if ...on with the plan.
2. Edna won't leave the house under any circumstances. (will) Under ...leave the house.
3. If the river rises any higher, the town will be flooded. (rise) Should ..., the town will be flooded.
4. If you'd paid on time, you wouldn't have been cut off. (paid) Had ... you wouldn't have been cut off.
5. He had just recovered from flu when he caught a bad cold. (sooner) No...from flu than he caught a bad cold.
6. He took such a long holiday that he forgot how to do this job. (did) Such a long holiday ...that he forgot how to do this job.
7. They managed to get our attention only by shouting and waving their arms. (manage) Only by shouting and waving their arms ...to get our attention.
8. He only asks for help when he is really desperate. (ask) Only when he is really desperate ...for help.
9. If I see him, I'll give him your message. (should) I'll

give him your message ...him. 10. Tom never seems worried about his future. (seem) Never ...worried about his future. 11. I've never had such fun anywhere else. (else) Nowhere ...such fun. 12. Lynn didn't realize that her mother was so worried about her. (realize) Little ...that her mother was so worried about her. 13. The army marched forward into battle. (marched) Forward ...into battle. 14. Her parents and her friends warned her not to go alone. (as) Her parents warned her not to go alone, ...friends. 15. She sang so well that she was offered a record deal. (sing) So ...that she was offered a record deal. 16. Unemployment hasn't been at such a high level at any time since the 1930's. (been) Not since the 1930's ... at such a high level. 17. I only watch television if I don't have anything else to do. (do) Only when I have nothing else to do ...television. 18. She's barely finished drying her hair when her first guests arrived. (had) Barely ...drying her hair when her first guests arrived. 19. He didn't thank me once for feeding his cat. (once) Not ...me for feeding his cat. 20. If there had been a phone nearby, he would have called an ambulance. (there) Had ...nearby, he would have called an ambulance.

Revision test. In twelve of the following sentences, there are mistakes with word order and missing auxiliaries. Tick (✓) the correct sentences and then find the mistakes and correct them

1. They're going to complain about this and so are we.
2. Little we knew the full extent of his involvement in the fraud.
3. The sales director is resigning and so most of the marketing team are.
4. I tried to get there by nine, only was there a traffic jam on the motorway.
5. Over there stood the three-metre tall statue of Lenin.
6. The embassy refuses to intervene. Well, so it be.
7. Tomorrow the first day is of the rest of your life.
8. Long live the glorious republic!
9. No way is the boss treating me like that and getting away with it!
10. Under no circumstances, latecomers will be admitted to the auditorium.
11. Armando and Josepha are quite destitute and such the condition is of many of the refugees.
12. Now the time is for investors to think about buying Treasury Bonds.
13. Rarely had we encountered such friendly and positive attitudes.
14. Oh look – here comes the procession at last.
15. Not since Kubrick's 2001 a director has made such an intellectually challenging sci-fi movie.
16. The government's proposals are unrealistic, as those are of the opposition.
17. Opposite this house ran the old city walls.
18. Only with the greatest of luck, he managed to escape from the rising floodwaters.
19. May John and Carol have a long and happy life together.
20. No doubt didn't he realise the consequences of his actions.

THEME 2.12. PUNCTUATION

Revision

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=r4QZG71z96o&ab_channel=Grammaropolis

Theoretical background. Punctuation

<https://www.thepunctuationguide.com/comma.html>

<https://www.sussex.ac.uk/informatics/punctuation/>

https://languageadvisor.net/wp-content/uploads/2021/09/Complete_English_Punctuation_Rules.pdf

Exercise 1. Convert the following declarative sentences into exclamatory sentences. Refer to the example given below

Example:

Declarative Sentence: This is a big house.

Exclamatory Sentence: What a big house this is!

Now, try doing the same with the sentences given below.

1. It was very strange.
2. I love you.
3. You have made a big mess.
4. The baby is so adorable.
5. I miss college.
6. You have really big eyes.
7. That is good news.
8. It was a surprise.
9. It was a great movie.
10. I loved the book.

Exercise 2. Rewrite the sentences using “so” or “such” at the beginning of the sentence

1. As the exams were difficult, many students complained. So ...
2. His dream was so strange that his psychiatrist wrote about it in a medical journal. So ...
3. The explorers took such a long time to find the tomb that they had nearly run out of supplies. Such ...
4. Many people think she’s English because she speaks the language so fluently. High School for Gifted Students So ...
5. She is so ignorant that she has never heard of Shakespeare. Such ...
6. He was so surprised that he nearly fell off his chair. Such ...

Exercise 3 Complete the sentences using the words in bold. Use two to five words

1. He broke his leg during the summer holidays. (that) It was during ...he broke

his leg.

2. He didn't realize a surprise party awaited him. (know) Little ...a surprise party awaited him.

3. Why did you leave work early today? (that) Why was ...early today?

4. It was impossible for us to have a day off work. (could) On no account ...a day off work.

5. You had to be lucky to discover gold in those days. (could) Only if you... discover gold in those days.

6. Hilary and Tenzing were the first climbers to reach the summit of Mount Everest. (who) It was ...him at the station.

7. The courier met him at the station. (who) It was ...him at the station.

8. You should never park on double yellow lines. (circumstances) Under ...on double yellow lines.

9. He seldom tells us what he's really thinking. (tell) Seldom ...he's really think

Exercise 4. Fill the gaps using the words in the box

has before than audience then was ...started ·will can· did · so many...had

1. Hardly ever an athlete won so many medals in such a short time.

2. Little we realise what a social faux-pas we had committed.

3. Scarcely the match started when the trouble began.

4. Only by standing on tip-toe I able to see anything at all.

5. Seldom can an have heard a better interpretation of this symphony.

6. Hardly had the controversial opera when people began to walk out.

7. Only if we leave now we be in time to catch the train.

8. Never have I seen people turn out for this event.

9. Rarely a remark have been more ill-judged.

10.Only did it become clear what the extent of the damage was.

11.Barely had we had time to pack up the picnic things the heavens opened

12.No sooner had we asked for a quieter room, we were given one.

Exercise 5. Make inverted sentences from the sentences given, using the words in brackets

1. She has no idea what a surprise she's going to get. (Little ... know)

2. The bell had barely started to ring when the children rushed out of the classroom. (Scarcely)

3. He didn't start his speech until there was absolute silence in the hall (Not ...)

4. We will only be able to accept your offer if we are offered free delivery (Only ...)

5. It is with good reason that Edinburgh is known as the Athens of the North (Not for ...)

6. We have never been so well wined and dined in our lives (Never ...)

7. She didn't break the news of her engagement until after dinner (Only ...)

8. We weren't told that we would need our passports. (At no time ...)
9. They don't charge you as much for water anywhere else. (Nowhere else ...)
10. I wouldn't fly with them again even if they offered me a free flight. (Not even ...)
11. We had barely entered the shop when an assistant jumped on us. (Hardly ... when ...)
12. He is both charming and very rich. (Not only ..., but ... also ...)

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=RPL8iij1X2A&ab_channel=LearnEasyEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1aa--jf4CjY&ab_channel=Adam%E2%80%99sEnglishLessons%C2%B7engVid

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zVu-XvULZNg&ab_channel=SparkleEnglish

Exercise 1. Choose the sentence with the appropriate use of punctuation

1. I know, what you want. I know what you want. I know what you want? I know what you want!
2. You dont know me well do you. You dont know me well do you? You don't know me well, do you. You don't know me well do you? You don't know me well, do you?

Explanation: In the selected sentence, there's an appropriate use of the apostrophe, the comma before the tag question and a question mark at the end of the sentence as it is an interrogative sentence.

3. Do you recall my name my address my job my passion

Do you recall my name my address my job my passion? Do you recall my name my address my job my passion. Do you recall my name? My address? My job? My passion? Do you recall my name, my address, my job and my passion!

Explanation: In the selected sentence, there's an appropriate use of the question mark in series as it implies the use of same subject and verb.

4. What I can't believe you did this to her

What, I can't believe you did this to her? What? I can't believe you did this to her. What I can't believe you did this to her. What! I can't believe you did this to her!

Explanation: In the selected sentence, there's an appropriate use of exclamation mark within and at the end of the sentence.

5. I knew what would happen if we went there but we had to go anyway

I knew what would happen if we went there, but we had to go anyway I knew what would happen if we went there but we had to go anyway? I knew what would happen, if we went there but we had to go anyway. I knew what would happen if we went there but we had to go anyway!

Explanation: In the selected sentence, there's an appropriate use of a comma between two independent clauses and period mark at the end of the sentence.

6. Do you remember what we used to do when we played together as childhood friends

Do you remember what we used to do, when we played together as childhood friends? Do you remember what we used to do when we played together as childhood friends! Do you remember what we used to do when we played together as childhood friends? Do you remember what we used to do when we played together as childhood friends.

Explanation: In the selected sentence, there's an appropriate use of a question mark at the end of the sentence as it is an interrogative sentence.

7. In summer its way too hot around here

In summer, its way too hot around here. In summer, it's way too hot around here. In summer its way too hot around here. In summer, it's way too hot around here!

Explanation: In the selected sentence, there's an appropriate use of apostrophe, comma, and period mark at the end of the sentence.

8. We had pizza beef steak onion rings and diet coke at the dinner

We had pizza beef steak onion rings and diet coke at the dinner. We had pizza, beef steak, onion rings and diet coke at the dinner. We had pizza; beef steak; onion rings; and diet coke at the dinner? We had pizza, beef steak, onion rings, and diet coke at the dinner!

Explanation: In the selected sentence, there's an appropriate use of a comma to separate multiple items of the same category and period mark at the end of the sentence.

Exercise 2. Use appropriate punctuation marks in the following sentences

1. We had a great time in France the kids really enjoyed it.
2. Some people work best in the mornings others do better in the evenings.
3. What are you doing next weekend.
4. Mother had to go into hospital she had heart problems.
5. Did you understand why I was upset.
6. It is a fine idea let us hope that it is going to work.
7. We will be arriving on Monday morning at least I think so.
8. A textbook can be a wall between teacher and class.
9. The girls father sat in a corner.
10. In the words of Murphys Law Anything that can go wrong will go wrong.

Exercise 3. Place the commas where needed in the following sentences. Cross out any misplaced commas

1. The high school cheerleaders who were all blonde were the most popular kids in school.

2. All the cheerleaders however were also honor roll students.
3. To earn extra credit students can work in the school library.
4. Everyone believed that Loretta was smart, imaginative, friendly and witty.
5. Loretta studied very hard for the test and she felt confident that she would pass.
6. I threw the filthy stinky wet shoes outside.
7. “We have the best football team around,” Cody bragged, “and our record proves it!”
8. Alice said that winning the contest made her feel like, a princess.
9. The top football team was from Des Moines Iowa.
10. After winning the state championship every student on the team was ready to celebrate.

Exercise 4. The Dash, Slash, Ellipses & Brackets Place the appropriate mark (selecting from the dash, slash, ellipses or brackets) where needed in the following sentences. Cross out any misplaced marks

1. “I’m excited about the wedding, yet—.”
2. “I had never met him [the victim] before last night when he came to the club,” the bartender explained.
3. Every one of the agents filled his / her briefcase with free merchandise from the various sales representatives.
4. I remember a time when everyone used to quote JFK’s famous appeal, “Ask not what your country canbut what you can do for your country.”
5. Brett Waggoner—my first love, is the only man for me.
6. The disaster in South-East Asia /tsunami in December 2004/ was enormously devastating!
7. Adam hesitated at first, but then he said, “. . . well, you are welcome to stay in the guest room.”
8. All the children (six sisters (two half-sisters and four full sisters) and two brothers) were at their parents’ home for the celebration.
9. In fourth grade I learned a Wordsworth poem which began “I wander’d lonely as a cloud/That floats on high o’er vales and hills,/When all at once I saw a crowd,/A host, of golden daffodils;” however, I can’t remember the rest.
10. Since Wyatt appeared to be the leader of the “probies”—the less experienced, highly impressionable probationers—he was asked to represent them at the meeting.

Exercise 5. The following paragraph contains errors in punctuation

May 18 2011

Dear Hiring Manager

Allow me to introduce myself in my previous position I was known as the King of Sales. I hope to earn the same title within your company. My name is Frances Fortune. I have thirteen years experience in corporate sales and account

management. I have been the top rated seller for two years in a row in my previous position. Clients recognize me as dependable honest and resourceful. I have a strong work ethic and great interpersonal skills. I excel at goal setting and time management. However you don't have to take my word for it I will be happy to provide personal and professional references upon request. You're welcome to contact my previous employer to inquire about my work performance. I look forward to speaking with you in person in the near future.

Sincerely

Frances Fortune

Exercise 6. Insert Articles

Frank Crawford is ... American citizen. He is also ... FBI agent (and has ... ID card to prove it) whose qualifications include ... M.A. and ... Ph.D. - and he has ... I.Q. of 160. Because his father was ... M.P. in ... England and his mother, ... Italian, worked as ... G.P. there, Frank often sees things from ... European perspective. He strongly supports ... idea of ... united Europe. He was recently in London for ... one-day conference on ... organised crime, and he gave ... speech which lasted ... hour. (You can get ... copy of his speech by sending ... s.a.e. to ... address below.) When in London he always stays at ... hotel in ... Holland Park, near ... Oxford Street, where he always eats ... onion sandwich for ... breakfast. When Frank inherited ... fortune from ... uncle recently, he used it to found ... university and buy ... x-ray machine for ... hospital.

There was ... collision between ... car and ... cyclist at ... crossroads near ... my house early in ... morning. ... cyclist was taken to ... hospital with ... concussion. ... driver of ... car was treated for ... shock. ... witnesses say that ... car was going at ... seventy miles ... hour.

My aunt lived on ... ground floor of ... old house on ... River Thames. She was very much afraid of ... burglars and always locked ... house before she went to ... bed. She also took ... precaution of looking under ... bed to see if ... burglar was hiding there.

Exercise 7. Insert Prepositions

1. The young man has been addicted ... drugs for ages.
2. Ebooks are very much ... demand at the moment.
3. It was love ... first sight.
4. There isn't any access ... the village because ... the road blocks.
5. I'm afraid I'm not very good ... animals.
6. I was shocked ... Sam's behaviour.
7. The commander was ... charge of all the troops in the region.
8. She knocked over the vase ... mistake.
9. She was able to visit him ... a regular basis.
10. They worked hard but didn't come up ... a solution ... the problem.
11. He spoke ... behalf of his colleagues.

12. We are ... good terms with our neighbours and I want it to stay like that.
13. We ran out ... luck. All of the restaurants were closed.
14. Don't be angry ... me. I didn't do anything wrong.
15. I am absolutely capable ... preparing my own meal.
16. She was ... high spirits because she had done well at the exam.
17. You're too early ... our lesson. why don't you go get some coffee and wait outside.
18. I am very keen ... trying to get the right job.

Exercise 8. Use correct tenses

1. It ... that, by 2050, world population ... twice as much as it is now.
 A) appeared / would have been rising B) appears / will have risen C) has appeared / will be rising D) would appear / has risen E) will appear / would rise
2. After years of cheap credit worldwide, the U.S. Federal Reserve ... its short-term rates for two years, and now comes new signs that long-term rates, in the end, ... to rise, too.
 A) has been rising / are starting B) rose / had started C) will have risen / had been starting D) was rising / started E) had risen / have started
3. Scientists ... that by 2030, doctors ... the people suffering from certain illness during their space travel in the health care institutions in space.
 A) will have expected / are treating B) have expected / would be treating C) expected / had treated D) will expect / will have been treating E) expect / will be treating
4. She had been trying to learn how to use a computer ... as long as she lived here ... she gave up because of her illness.
 A) for / when B) till / before C) before / for D) so / until E) since / once
5. Jane quitted trying for the swimming team after that time she ... out too far down at Horn Pond.
 A) swims B) will swim C) would swim D) was swimming E) had swum
6. Stone ..., and so the tools of long ago have remained when even the bones of the men who made them ... without trace.
 A) didn't decay / disappeared B) wouldn't decay / disappear C) doesn't decay / have disappeared D) won't decay / had disappeared E) didn't decay / have disappeared
7. We ... a play by Oscar Wilde in the class which ... "The importance of Being Earnest"
 A) read / is called B) are reading / was called C) have read / has been called D) had read / was called E) are reading / is called
8. No zoologist ... able to keep a gorilla under close observation in the dark jungles in which he ...
 A) was / lived B) will / will live C) had been / has lived D) is / had been living E) has been / lives

9. The practice of working woman ... so widespread that the working mother ... now not an unusual factor in the world.

A) becomes / was B) became / is C) had become / is D) has become / is E) became / was

10. What ... almost all Hollywood pictures ... their inner emptiness.

A) characterized / was B) characterizes / had been C) has characterized / were D) characterized / will be E) characterizes / is

11. When I first arrived at State University, I ... by the size of the campus. Fortunately, I found three helpful people who ... me from total confusion.

A) had been overwhelmed / saved B) was overwhelmed / saved C) was overwhelmed / was saving D) would be overwhelmed / had saved E) was overwhelmed / had saved

12. The peace which Istanbul once ..., ... away.

A) know / has been swept B) knew / had been swept C) knew / has been swept D) knows / will sweep E) has known / swept

Exercise 9. Make necessary transformations

1. It's very unlikely that Martin will win the 100 metres, as he's out of training. Martin has almost (chance) the 100 metres, as he's out of training.

2. Most of the children ignored what the teacher had told them. Few of the children (notice) what the teacher had told them.

3. The company is unable to guarantee an allocated car-parking space to all employees. The company's employees shouldn't (count) allocated a car-parking space.

4. He no longer thinks he can find a job before the end of the year. He has given (hope) a job before the end of the year.

5. I'm sure Jemma is going to become a famous model one day. I think it's only (matter) Jemma becomes a famous model.

6. I think learning to use a typewriter is a waste of time. I can't (point) how to use a typewriter.

Exercise 10. Correct mistakes if any

1. It is raining when I got home last night.

2. My sister is annoying today, but usually she is nice.

3. I have not ate anything today.

4. If I am a child, I would play outside.

5. Everyone have seen that movie.

6. If we will be late, they will be angry.

7. My father is thinking that I should stop smoking.

8. Look! It is snow.

9. I fell asleep while I watched TV.

10. I have lived in Canada since 10 months.

Homework 1. Each sentence contains a punctuation error

Commas

The wedding will be July 13 2012.

The date by the way is the anniversary of the day that they met.

The groom the bride and their parents are all planning the event.

Actually all of their friends and relatives are involved in the planning.

The bride is a baker so she will be making the wedding cake herself.

The photography the catering and the music will all be friends.

Semicolons

Some people spend a lot of money hiring people for wedding services they are lucky to have such talented friends.

The flowers will be either roses, daisies, and snapdragons orchids, tulips, and irises or peonies and lilies.

Colons

There will be three colors for the wedding: white, black, and gold.

They've finally narrowed down the dinner choices salmon, steak, and a vegan stew.

Their wedding invitations contained the following quote from the Roman poet Ovid If you want to be loved, be lovable.

Quotes

The invitations said that the wedding would be "outdoor casual."

"What exactly does 'outdoor casual' mean?" I asked the bride.

She told me to dress comfortably and wear shoes that do not sink into the ground.

Apostrophes

On the day of the wedding, were going to rent a limo.

My brothers wife will make the arrangements.

Shes a great party organizer.

Each sentence contains a punctuation error. On your own sheet of paper, correct each sentence by adding commas, semicolons, colons, and apostrophes as needed.

My mothers garden is full of beautiful flowers.

She has carefully planted several species of roses peonies and irises.

She is especially proud of her thirty year old Japanese maple tree.

I am especially proud of the sunflowers I planted them!

You should see the birds that are attracted to the garden hummingbirds, finches, robins, and sparrows.

I like to watch the hummingbirds they are my favorite.

We spend a lot of time in the garden planting weeding and just enjoying the view.

Each flower has its own personality some seem shy and others seem bold.

Arent gardens wonderful?

You should come visit sometime Do you like to garden?

Homework 2. Punctuate the following sentences, using full stops and capital letters where appropriate

1. the man bought the newspaper he was an avid reader of the sun 2. jill ran up the hill with jack they needed to fetch a pail of water 3. the must-see film of the year is the new spiderman movie it stars tobey mcguire 4. on wednesday and thursday I am travelling to russia on the orient express 5. will young won the first ever pop idol competition pete waterman was a judge 6. manchester united have won my trophies 7. the beatles claimed they were more famous than god 8. the great wall of china was built by shih huang ti his title was first emperor of china 9. the mediterranean sea is a favourite holiday destination for british tourists 10. in 1989 a war broke out between the british and the boers in south africa

Punctuate the following sentences, inserting colons where necessary

1. We shall fight on the beaches we shall never surrender. 2. The good die young the wicked live forever. 3. Peace to those I love strife to my enemies. 4. Bright is the day dark is the night. 5. Behind me lay despair in front, only hope

Punctuate the following sentences, inserting colons and commas where necessary

1. I took five items my jacket a fishing rod a peanut butter sandwich a tooth pick and a pen knife. 2. The guest list read as follows Rev. Bill Hinter Lady Smythe-Bottom Gordon James and Dizzy the Clown. 3. These were the reasons for his odd behaviour fear of the dark fear of confined spaces fear of spiders and way too much caffeine that morning. 4. Certain people are legends Marilyn Monroe James Dean Houdini and Charlie Chaplin. 5. He shook with fear when he saw what lay before him a rocky path a steep slippery slope a cliff edge and a fifty foot drop into the unknown.

Punctuate the following sentences, inserting colons, commas and capital letters

1. charles dickens wrote ‘a tale of two cities’ ‘little dorrit’ ‘a Christmas carol’ and ‘bleak house’ amongst others. 2. exams will take place this week monday tuesday before break thursday afternoon and friday in place of assembly. 3. the guests arrived early lady ponsonby in diamonds and a white fur coat lord picklenoze with a glamorous girl on each arm mr carruthers with half the contents of a bottle of whisky already under his belt and the luscious honourable miss hilly flower in a very short very shiny dress.

Additional exercise 1. Link each person with their address and punctuate both using capital letters

george bush	hogwarts school
tony blair	buckingham palace
sherlock holmes	stratford upon avon
king Charles	ten downing street

harry potter	221b baker street
william shakespeare	the white house

Additional exercise 2. Add the necessary commas to the sentences

1. Being first to arrive he sat down in the front row. 2. Having washed her face she brushed her hair. 3. Frightened by the tremendous explosion the soldiers bolted to their dug-out. 4. Exhausted after the cross-country competition they lay down to rest. 5. Leaping the fence she raced across the fields to her home. 6. Dr Brookes and Mrs Johnson the receptionist are doing a sponsored run. 7. Served with milk and sugar cornflakes are a great breakfast. 8. Bruce told her to be quiet but she started to growl. 9. Tom began to sing and I decided to study on my own. 10. I like bacon eggs sausage fried toast and orange juice for my breakfast. 11. Mount Everest the highest mountain in the world is in Nepal. 12. Mr Joyce our headteacher came to our school in September 199

Revision test

1. For each of the following, choose the correct sentence

- A) Go West three blocks and turn right.
- B) Go west three blocks and turn right.
- C) Go West three blocks, and turn right.

2. A) Yes, sir, I will do it immediately.
 B) Yes sir, I will do it immediately.
 C) Yes, Sir, I will do it immediately.
 D) Yes Sir, I will do it immediately.

3. A) "How," I asked, "Can you always be so forgetful?"
 B) "How," I asked, "Can you always be so forgetful?"
 C) "How," I asked, "can you always be so forgetful?"
 D) "How," I asked, "can you always be so forgetful?"

4. A) The mayor frowned, he didn't like what he saw.
 B) The Mayor frowned, He didn't like what he saw.
 C) The Mayor frowned; He didn't like what he saw.
 D) The mayor frowned. He didn't like what he saw.

5. A) Although we have a competent staff; bottlenecks do occur.
 B) Although we have a competent staff, bottlenecks do occur.
 C) Although we have a competent Staff; bottlenecks do occur.
 D) Although we have a competent Staff, bottlenecks do occur.

6. A) I did not receive the order; therefore, I will not pay my bill.
 B) I did not receive the order: Therefore I will not pay my bill.

- C) I did not receive the order; therefore; I will not pay my bill.
D) I did not receive the order, therefore; I will not pay my bill.
7. A) We offer a variety of drinks, for instance: beer.
B) We offer a variety of drinks, for instance, beer.
C) We offer a variety of drinks for instance, beer.
8. A) Is that book yours'?'
B) Is that book your's?
C) Is that book yours?
9. A) We have much to do; for example, the carpets need vacuuming.
B) We have much to do for example: the carpets need vacuuming.
C) We have much to do, for example: the carpets need vacuuming.
D) We have much to do, for example. The carpets need vacuuming.
10. A) No you cannot stay out late tonight.
B) No, you cannot stay out, late, tonight.
C) No, you cannot stay out late tonight.
D) No you cannot stay, out late, tonight.

THEME 2.13. MISCELLANEOUS

Revision

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9In5IUUCzAA&ab_channel=Grammaropolis

- Theoretical background.**
1. Конструкція I я теж New Round Up, 6, pp.219-220, Grammarway 4, p.184
 2. Паралелізм TOEFL, p.59
 3. Словотвір New Round Up, 6, pp.162-163. Grammarway 4, p.59, 66-67
 4. Слова other, the other, another New Round Up, 6, p. 203, TOEFL, p.52
 5. Слова quite, pretty, rather In Use, unit 103, New Round Up, 6, pp.60-63
 6. Words often confused Grammarway 4, pp.190-193

Exercise 1. Punctuate the text

Dear John: I want a man who knows what love is all about you are generous kind thoughtful people who are not like you admit to being useless and inferior you have ruined me for other men I yearn for you I have no feelings whatsoever when we're apart I can be forever happy will you let me be yours Jane

Exercise 2. Punctuate the following sentences

1. He is not really nice looking and yet he has enormous charm
2. When I was a child I could watch TV whenever I wanted to
3. It is a fine idea let us hope that it is going to work
4. Mrs Solomon who was sitting behind the desk gave me a big smile
5. We were believe it or not in love with each other
6. I don't like this one bit said Julia
7. Have you met our handsome new financial director
8. If you are ever in London come and see you
9. Michael in the Ferrari was cornering superbly
10. Looking straight at her he said I cant help you

Exercise 3. Choose correct punctuation

Scientists and philosophers of science tend to speak as if “scientific language” were intrinsically precise [:] [-] [,] as if those who use it must understand one another’s meaning [,] even if they disagree [,] But1 [,] in fact [,] scientific language is not as different from ordinary language as is commonly believed [,] It [,] too [,]2 is subject to imprecision and ambiguity [, optional] and hence to imperfect understanding [,]3 [M]oreover [,]new theories or arguments are rarely [,] if ever [,] constructed by way of clear-cut steps of deduction and verification or falsification [,]4 neither are they defended [,] rejected [,] or accepted in so straightforward a manner [,] In practice [,] scientists combine the rules of

scientific methodology with a generous admixture of intuition [,] aesthetics [,] and philosophical commitment [;]5 the importance of what are sometimes called extra-rational or extra-logical components of thought in the discovery of a new principle or law is generally acknowledged [.] . . . but the role of these extra logical components in persuasion and acceptance in making an argument convincing is less frequently discussed [,] partly because they are less visible [.] The ways in which the credibility or effectiveness of an argument depends on the realm of common experiences [--] on extensive practice in communicating those experiences in a common language [--] are hard to see [,] precisely because such commonalities are taken for granted [.] Only when we step out of such a “consensual domain” [,] [--] when we can stand out on the periphery of a community with a common language [,] [--] do we begin to become aware of the unarticulated premises [,] mutual understandings [,] and assumed practices of a group [--] [:]6 even in those subjects that lend themselves most readily to quantification [.] Discourse depends heavily on conventions and interpretation [;] [--] conventions that are acquired over years of practice and participation in a community.

Exercise 4. Insert none both every much little some any many

1. I've sat in that chair a time and thought about poor Joseph.
2. Meg and Clare were in agreement about the cost of the repairs.
3. Why do you get me so upset time you come to the house?
4. moment now, John will arrive saying he's feeling sick and needs to go home.
5. Daniel, you have notion of what it takes to be successful.
6. of the donors was willing to increase their donation and the charity went broke.
7. We owe of what we know about Antarctica to the permanent research stations there.
8. If I give you the cash, can you buy wine and a bag of rice for me?

Exercise 5. Check the sentences

1. Despite that Harold wasn't the fastest runner, he won the race.
2. There were not many people at the party, but it was really enjoyable.
3. Despite not feel too good this morning, I went to work.
4. It's an old radio. Although, it works really well.
5. Although Gary worked for weeks on that assignment, he got a terrible mark for it.
6. Despite my thick overcoat, I felt cold while at the stadium watching the game.
7. In spite of the fact that I lay on the beach all day, I am as white as I was before!
8. I performed confidently at the interview. Despite, I didn't get the job.
9. Even though Rosa and Marcello had a huge row last night, they seem very happy today.

10. In spite to speak English well, they asked me to take a course at the university.

Video

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=kbd_CajdXaw&ab_channel=EnglishwithEmma%C2%B7engVid

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fojkyh3qfHI&ab_channel=KevinSpans

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Ya7rLeGhY1M&ab_channel=EvanAshworth

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=3g2pUJu5B_s&ab_channel=EdEra
https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IRNEUPXIObY&ab_channel=NewModelforLearningEnglish

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Yt0aSX0s8fc&ab_channel=%D0%A%D0%B2%D0%9A%D1%83%D1%80%D1%81%D1%96

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=I7PY924nqWY&ab_channel=Englishforfun

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vKp9U0JegyM&ab_channel=TheEnglishNinja

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=znoeHzG1vqY&ab_channel=EnglishwithLucy

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Vp2wS97X71E&ab_channel=BBCLearningEnglish

Exercise 1. Fill in the blanks with "so" and "neither"

1. I don't know Persian. / ... do I.
2. The kids aren't in the garden. / is their mother.
3. My sister can't play any musical instrument. can I.
4. Jason has finished his work. / ... has Bill.
5. My brother hates broccoli. / ... do I.
6. They weren't with us yesterday. / was Peter.
7. Helena arrived late for the meeting. / did Sarah.
8. David couldn't do well in the exam. / could the rest of the class.
9. She doesn't agree with you. / do I.
10. Joanna has got two brothers. / have I.

Exercise 2. Agree or disagree

1. My mother has been a nurse for years. *mine*
2. She is not going to the dentist *we*

3. We should visit our friends *they*
4. Peter lives in Italy. *Jack*
5. John is not learning French. *Mary*
6. I will do it. *they*
7. We should follow his advice. *you*
8. Jane isn't an engineer. *July*
9. I enjoyed the game. *we*
10. They've been to Austria. *my cousins*
11. I'm not going to a party tonight. *I*
12. I saw him last month. *the police*
13. My mother was very upset by his behaviour. *the teachers*
14. We had been there twice. *they*
15. I can't play the piano. *She*

Exercise 3. Make nouns from the following words

employ publish injure except loyal reject amaze drive differ examine

Add the correct prefixes.

1. The ...**government** protesters marched to parliament.
2. John ... **slept** and was late for work.
3. He is taking a ... **atlantic** flight from London to New York.
4. The ... **president** of the United States was honoured at a ceremony.
5. Superman is a comic strip character who has ...**human** strength.
6. John left his job because he was ...**able** to deal with such a large amount of work.
7. The two countries ...**operated** to catch the criminal.
8. That child looks very thin, he must be ...**fed**.
9. The train travels ...**stop** from London to Edinburgh.
10. Tom knew the information was somewhere in his...**consciousness**, but he couldn't remember it.

Exercise 4 Fill in: another, (the) other(s), each other or every other

1. My sister has .. two years to go before she finishes her university course.
2. Mr and Mrs White are arriving this evening but guests won't be here until tomorrow.
3. Now that John is living in Newcastle we don't get to see ... very often.
4. I don't have time to read a newspaper every day, so I buy one ... day.
5. Two new students started school today. One is Jane Lloyd and ... is Ruth Howard.
6. I've got one of the five books I ordered but ... haven't arrived yet.
7. In ... five years I'll be running my own business.
8. One of the most environmentally friendly means of transport is the bicycle; ... are the train and the tram.
9. Only two students passed the exam. All ... failed.
10. Some people liked the film while ... were shocked by it.
11. These books are mine; ... are Mary's.
12. We go out to eat ... Sunday.

Exercise 5. Choose the correct variant

1. Being a doctor is a quite / pretty stressful job.
2. It is pretty / rather a long way from the bus stop to the school.
3. This printer never works. It's fairly / quite useless.
4. Lisa is rather / quite more sporty than her sister.
5. The witness's account of the robbery was quite / pretty true.
6. It was rather / pretty a waste of time cooking dinner. Tim's just ordered pizza.
7. It was a fairly / quite interesting film but it wasn't the best I've seen
8. Robert is quite / fairly a funny man.
9. Kim is rather / fairly good at Maths, but she sometimes makes mistakes.
10. John is rather / quite certain that he'll pass the exams.

Exercise 6 Choose the correct word

1. I just read a story about a man without a ...shadow shade
2. We are looking for some ... to sit in. Shade shadow
3. It was not a ... thing to do. sensible sensitive
4. ... me to pay the bills. remind remember
5. You make me ... my mother. remember remind
6. Who discovered the ... of gravitation? principle principal
7. I have the ... to visit Dubai next year. possibility opportunity
8. There is a/an of my visiting Dubai next year. possibility opportunity
9. I ... the books on the table. lain lied laid
10. I will see you ... a few days. in later
11. She has a ... way of walking. fun funny
12. I will be staying ... the weekend. until by
13. They are not going to ... this game. loose lose
14. I think my pants are a little too loose lose
15. This is one of the side ... of this medication. effects affects
16. Taking this medication might ... your sleep. effect affect
17. This is really ...! exiting exciting
18. The band will be ... the stadium in about half an hour. exiting

Exercise 7. Sentences in the next two exercises contain faulty parallelism. Make them parallel

1. John likes traveling, listening to music, reading novels, and to play tennis.
2. Harvesting rain water and treating industrial waste will reduce pollution and help plants and animals recuperate.
3. From one direction came the mob, and the police came from the other.
4. I used to walk in front of the mirror wearing fashionable clothes and posing stylishly.
5. It is true that I loaned you \$340 and the payment was made last week.
6. He served accurately, with speed, and without exerting much effort.

7. I am inspired from your work, and working with you will be a great opportunity for me to grow both professionally and as a person.
8. I believe I'll be a good fit in this industry because I can meet tough deadlines, possess leadership qualities, and quite diligent.
9. Tom acted in action and drama movies; Leonardo's films are different.
10. I accepted the job offer, but my friend thought it best not to accept.

Exercise 8. Insert Articles

1. Martina is learning to play violin.
2. Jennifer is learning to play chess.
3. Is this Oxford road?' said lorry driver.
4. John works in a shop in Park Lane.
5. This book consists of quotations from great philosophers.
6. We reached our destination at sunset.
7. Terry spent summer climbing in Alps.
8. After they had completed their work in prison, bricklayers moved to another site.
9. Mr. Watt refused even to visit home his relatives wanted to put him in.
10. History was his favourite subject at school.

Exercise 9. Insert Prepositions

1. The murderer was sentenced ... life imprisonment.
2. What's the matter with you. Is there anything ... your mind ?
3. He died ... a heart attack.
4. My sister is suffering cancer .
5. My boyfriend bought me some flowers, much ... my surprise.
6. That's typical ... him to always be so late.
7. Grisham's novels have been translated fro... many languages.
8. The police soon had the riots control.
9. Don't waste so much money new clothes.
10. I have to hurry. I want to be time for the new presentation.
11. All trains arriving from London are time.
12. The guard told us to keep the lawn. It has been freshly cut.

Exercise 10. Use correct tenses

1. The young soldier ... that he ... in the battle.
 A) will fear / would be killed B) feared / was killed C) fears / is killed D) fears / will be killed E) has feared / is killed
2. The oldest Mesoamerican calendar inscriptions ... from the site of San Jose Mogote in the Oaxaca Valley, with day signs that ... from 600 BC.
 A) were / were dated B) were / had been dated C) are / are dated D) have been / will be dated E) will be / have been dated

3. William S. Hart ... the greatest of all Western stars, for he ... in nothing but Westerns.

A) had been / appeared B) has been / appeared C) was / appears D) is / would appear E) is / is appearing

4. One important field in which the laser ... many applications ... communication.

A) has / is B) was / are C) does / are D) have / is E) is / is

5. Since my roommate ... yet, Mrs Stanton ... me all around the dormitory.

A) does not come / showed B) has not come / showed C) was not coming / showed D) hadn't come / had showed E) had not come / showed

6. Whoever ... the cooking ... a great deal of work to do.

A) do / has B) does / had had C) has done / has D) is doing / had E) does / have

7. The oldest Mesoamerican calendar inscriptions ... from the site of San Jose Mogote in the Oaxaca Valley, with day signs that ... from 600 BC.

A) were / were dated B) were / had been dated C) are / are dated D) have been / will be dated E) will be / have been dated

8. William S. Hart ... the greatest of all Western stars, for he ... in nothing but Westerns.

A) had been / appeared B) has been / appeared C) was / appears D) is / would appear E) is / is appearing

9. One important field in which the laser ... many applications ... communication.

A) has / is B) was / are C) does / are D) have / is E) is / is

10. Since my roommate ... yet, Mrs Stanton ... me all around the dormitory.

A) does not come / showed B) has not come / showed C) was not coming / showed D) hadn't come / had showed E) had not come / showed

11. Whoever ... the cooking ... a great deal of work to do.

A) do / has B) does / had had C) has done / has D) is doing / had E) does / have

12. It's only the second time I ... a football match in a stadium.

A) saw B) see C) will see D) had seen E) have seen

Exercise 11. Make necessary transformations

1. The company has a good reputation in the local area. The company (highly) of in the local area.

2. Nadia's friend arrived just as she was about to leave the restaurant. Nadia was (point) the restaurant when her friend arrived.

3. I don't expect the company to make a profit this year, given the economic climate. Given the economic climate, (surprised) the company made a profit this year.

4. Barbara's parents were certain that she would be a great tennis player.

Barbara's parents were (doubt) that she would be a great tennis player.

5. My grandfather had completely forgotten that he phoned me last night. My grandfather didn't (recollection) phoning me last night.

6. Pay claims must be submitted before the end of the month. You have (put) your pay claims before the end of the month.

Exercise 12. Correct mistakes if any

1. There is a warm country.
2. I have not an iPhone.
3. I haven't ever been to Korea.
4. The students have a good time in class today.
5. John probably isn't going to come to school tomorrow.
6. If the world ended tomorrow, I will be very sad.
7. I still did my homework at 10:30 pm last night.
8. He can speak Japanese because he was born in Canada.
9. Lee afraid of snakes.
10. The students were not interested in the lesson because it was bored.

Homework 1 Use the structures So, Neither...I

1. Edward is not going out tonight..
2. They've been to London so many times!.
3. She will be waiting for John at the party by this time tomorrow..
4. Elizabeth doesn't like coffee..
5. Kate would like to visit India.
6. I can't climb this hill..
7. Laura went to Malaysia yesterday.
8. In March I'll have been living here for ten years.
9. She has to attend the meeting by 10 am..
10. Rosy was playing the piano before she had lunch.

Correct mistakes

1. Jack washed his shirts, shorts, and washed his pants.
2. I want to find a gym that is not only close to my apartment but also I want to find a cheap one.
3. Either you must prove your point or accept ours.
4. Without it, communication can turn into a ramble, become repetitive, and lose direction.
5. I love most of the subjects I've in my class, but I especially love math, the way I can finish its exercises faster than my classmates, and mixing chemicals in the chemistry lab.
6. Your housing costs include your mortgage payments, paying for property taxes and maintenance, cleaning, furniture, and insurance.
7. Numerous species of fauna have fallen prey to not only poaching for commercial and medicinal reasons but also to deforestation.

8. To remain in the race of technological advancement, it is important for the government to provide affordable and accessible internet service, provide access to electronic payment systems, develop human capital, and control misuse of technology.

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form of the words given in the brackets

1. Mr. Parks' lessons are really I hate his lessons. (bore)
2. My sisters are very ... (ambition)
3. I am so ... that we are going to New York tomorrow. (excite)
4. Women wear these skirts ... (tradition)
5. His job is to paint houses and put paper on the walls. He is a/an (decorate)
6. I want to see the National Theater's ... of Arthur Miller's 'The Last Yankee'. (present)
7. Are you ... in the latest developments in technology? (interest)
8. She is a very ... woman. (determination)
9. There is friendly ... between the two teams. (rival)
10. Is it your final ... ? (decide)
11. I don't like this team at all. They play (awful)
12. I am ... with her. (disgust)
13. Do you always behave ... when your naughty nieces come to visit? (tolerance)
14. My nephew is a professional (wrestle)
15. I don't like eating ... cabbages. (pickle)

Homework 2 Fill in: quite or rather

A: I found that book a 1) boring one. B: Oh really? I thought it had 2) ... a good plot. A: Oh, come on! The ending was a 3) ... unlikely one, don't you think? B: No, not at all. In fact, I think the whole book was 4) ... interesting. A: Well, if you ask me, you've got a 5) ... strange taste in books.

Choose another or other to complete the sentences.

1. Would you like ... cup of tea?
2. To be able to buy this dress, I need ... ten dollars.
3. We have some ... ways of dealing with the subject.
4. I don't like this hotel. Let's ask for
5. I've been to France, Germany and many ... European countries.
6. Ask me ... question.
7. Forget about this issue now, we have ... problems.
8. I've met Sarah before, but who is the ... girl standing next to you?
9. I can speak two languages. One is Armenian and the ... is English.
10. Do you think there are ... species in the universe?

For each of the following sentences, choose the correct word choice

1. We discussed the multiple literary (illusions/allusions) within the text.
2. (Among/Between) me and you, I think Kallie won the contest.
3. She had too (many/much) sweaters in her closet.
4. Alex was (to/too) excited to sleep.
5. (Their/They're/There) going to the amusement park tomorrow.
6. The sugar had a negative (effect/affect) on the science experiment.
7. Nicole has (fewer/less) shoes than Sara.
8. The gas prices continue to (raise/rise).
9. Michael (hanged/hung) the picture for his mother.
10. Cindy, (lay/lie) the book on the table.
11. John scored higher on the exam (then/than) I did.
12. (Who/Whom) wants to go to the mall tonight?
13. Haley did not mean to (infer/imply) that Jenny was to blame.
14. John had (less/fewer) travel time because he lives closer to the airport.
15. (Whose/Who's) watch is this on the counter?
16. I am going to (lie/lay) down for an hour.
17. The disappearing penny was simply an optical (allusion/illusion).
18. The book is on the table over (their/there/they're).
19. (Whose/Who's) responsible for the advertising of the event.
20. From your words, I can (infer/imply) that you think he is guilty.
21. The weather greatly (effected/affected) the outcome of the race.
22. (Their/They're/There) books are on the bottom shelf.
23. Earlier today we walked (to/too) the ice cream parlor.
24. The prisoner was (hung/hanged) last night.
25. There are red roses scattered (among/between) the carnations.
26. Kelly ordered her lunch, and (then/than) she went back to work.
27. Mark wanted (to raise/to rise) the flag at the assembly today.
28. (Who/Whom) did you ask to the party?
29. There was too (much/many) chlorine in the pool.

Additional exercise 1. Fill in the gaps

1. Jason passed all his exams, ... did I.
2. My brother works as a teacher ... does his wife.
3. My bag wasn't at school ... was it at home.
4. Sandra doesn't enjoy watching football, Emma doesn't like it
5. If you want to come out with us ... , you need to finish your homework.
6. Nobody was eager to take part, ... was I.
7. Children spend a lot of time with computers, their parents do so
8. They couldn't hand in their project on time, I couldn't
9. Daniel was jealous of his brother, ... was I.
10. I stayed at home all day long, my brother stayed with me
11. Don't give me this stare, I am sure you wouldn't be able to do it
12. Nobody is perfect, ... are you.

Additional exercise 2. Use OTHER

1. You borrowed two books but returned only one. When will you return ... ?
2. There are a few sweets left. But where are ... ?
3. There are two sandwiches on the plate. I will take one of them and you may have ...
4. I don't get this rule. Can you give me another other the othr example?

5. The first task of the test was rather difficult but ...tasks were quite easy.
6. I don't like the color of this bag. Can you show me..bag?
7. What ...domestic animals do you know besides cats and dogs?
8. I see only two cups on the table? Where are...?
9. Some people like to argue while...always look for a compromise.
10. I can see only one glove here. Where is.....?

Revision test

1. I get up late at weekends, ... during cold weather.
 - including
 - particularly
 - similarly
2. She rarely drinks, ..., not during the week.
 - particularly
 - in other words
 - or at any rate
3. The study also mentions two other cities, ... Singapore and Shanghai.
 - namely
 - in other words
 - to be accurate
4. Her manner was rather offhand, ... rude.
 - at least
 - particularly
 - not to say
5. The tomato is not, ... , a vegetable even though it is commonly thought of as one.
 - by contrast
 - strictly speaking
 - likewise
6. Many cities, Hong Kong ... , have extensive mass transit systems.
 - say
 - including
 - for example
7. Prices at the mall were outrageous, ... , considerably higher than at other shopping centres.
 - or at least
 - in other words
 - not to say
8. A number of countries, ... the USA and the UK, have banned smoking in restaurants.
 - including
 - namely
 - viz.

9. Everyone knows that cigarettes cause disease. Why, ... , do many people continue to smoke?

for example

so

then

10. He needs to go on a diet, ... , cut down on sweets.

that is to say

or at any rate

likewise

11. Her report highlighted what we all know, ... that there have been problems with distribution.

viz

for example

in particular

12. English is often said to be the most commonly spoken language although ..., this is not true as Chinese and Spanish have more native speakers.

at least

in other words

strictly speaking

13. I'd like to thank our local office staff, ...David Evans, Jackie Robbins and Mike Smith.

that is to say

namely

for instance

14. This chapter focuses on three elements that are essential for a successful product, ... good design, quality materials and effective marketing.

namely

for example

in addition

15. The Thai language has five tones. Cantonese, ... , uses tone to convey meaning.

by contrast

for example

similarly

16. I get up late at weekends, ... during cold weather.

including

particularly

similarly

17. She rarely drinks, ... , not during the week.

particularly

in other words

or at any rate

18. The study also mentions two other cities, ... Singapore and Shanghai.

- namely
in other words
to be accurate
19. Her manner was rather offhand, ... rude.
at least
particularly
not to say
20. The tomato is not, ... , a vegetable even though it is commonly thought of as one.
by contrast
strictly speaking
likewise
21. Many cities, Hong Kong ... , have extensive mass transit systems.
say
including
for example
22. Prices at the mall were outrageous, ... , considerably higher than at other shopping centres.
or at least
in other words
not to say
23. A number of countries, ... the USA and the UK, have banned smoking in restaurants.
including
namely
viz.
24. Everyone knows that cigarettes cause disease. Why, ... , do many people continue to smoke?
for example
so
then
25. He needs to go on a diet, ... , cut down on sweets.
that is to say
or at any rate
likewise
26. Her report highlighted what we all know, ... that there have been problems with distribution.
viz
for example
in particular
27. English is often said to be the most commonly spoken language although ... , this is not true as Chinese and Spanish have more native speakers.
at least

in other words
strictly speaking

28. I'd like to thank our local office staff, ...David Evans, Jackie Robbins and Mike Smith.

that is to say
namely
for instance

29. This chapter focuses on three elements that are essential for a successful product, ... good design, quality materials and effective marketing.

namely
for example
in addition

30. The Thai language has five tones. Cantonese, ... , uses tone to convey meaning.

by contrast
for example
similarly

THEME 2.14 REVISION. FINAL TEST

Exercise 1. Add the correct prefixes to form the opposite of the words in bold

1. I don't know what this letter says because the handwriting is totally **legible**.
2. It's raining, so **fortunately** the game has been cancelled. 3. Ricky is quite ... **polite** as he never says 'please' or 'thank you '. 4. The garden is surrounded by a tall fence and is **visible** from the main road. 5. Kim found a dog on her doorstep which had obviously been ... **treated** by its owner. 6. They had their electricity **connected** because they didn't pay the bill in time. 7. Grace is quite a(n) ... **honest** person, so I'm not sure she is telling the truth. 8. Our team isn't playing well as they seem **capable** of keeping possession of the ball today.

Exercise 2. Andrew has just met Jessica at a party. They are finding out that they have a lot in common. Put in the structures with so and neither.

Andrew: I haven't been to a party for ages.

Jessica: I hate crowded rooms.

Andrew: Yes, ... I'm not a party-goer, really.

Jessica: No, ... I can't make conversation.

Andrew: ... You know, I'm a quiet sort of person.

Jessica: And ... I lead a pretty quiet life.

Andrew: Well, ... I haven't got many friends.

Jessica: ... And I would really like a good friend.

Andrew: Oh, ...

Exercise 3. Choose another or other to complete the sentences. Would you like ...glass of wine?.

- They're going to buycomputer.

- In this soup you can use carrots orvegetables.

- There areshops in the center.

- One day we went to beach. Onoccasion we went to the mountain.

- We work at the same company, but she works with people.

- I have a lot to do this week. Let's meet some time.

- They live in the city, but havehouse in the country.

- My friend speaks three languages. One is Japanese and one is Italian.

- I like to go your party tonight, but I havethings to do.

Exercise 4. Read the text about poor old Marge and then complete the third conditional sentences about her day using the prompts provided

Marge is a woman of 55 who lives on her own in a small house in Scotland. She did not have a very nice day yesterday!

As she was leaving the house, she forgot her bus ticket. Only when she got to the bus stop did she realise this, so she had to hurry back to the house. She opened the door, put the keys on the telephone table, went into the kitchen to get her bus ticket and left again without her keys.

She caught the 8.42 a.m bus instead of her usual 8.30 a.m bus and arrived at work about ten minutes late. Mr. Jones, her boss, was in a bad mood yesterday and shouted at her when she arrived late. As a result, they had an argument in front of all the other people in the office. Mr. Jones told her she would have to stay behind for fifteen minutes at lunch to finish some important work.

At lunch, Marge only had time for a quick sandwich and didn't go to the office cafeteria with the others as normal. Everyone returned from lunch very happy because they had met a new employee who had told some very funny jokes. Marge was not happy. She was hungry and tired.

She was so hungry as she left the office at 5 o'clock that she bought a hot dog from the man on the street corner. Within an hour, she didn't feel very well and had a pain in her stomach. It was not her day!

She arrived home and realised she didn't have her keys, so had to walk two miles to her sister's house to get a spare set of keys. She went into her house, closed the door and went straight to bed.

1. if \ not \ forget \ bus ticket \ not \ have to \ return home, she wouldn't have had to return home.

2. if \ not \ put \ keys on table \ not \ forget them If she hadn't put her keys on the table.

3. she \ not late \ if \ catch \ an earlier bus if she had caught an earlier bus.

4. her boss \ not \ shout at her \ if \ not \ be \ bad mood Her boss wouldn't have shouted at her.

5. if \ Marge \ not late \ they \ not argue \ in office If Marge hadn't been late.

6. Marge \ meet \ new worker \ if \ go \ to canteen if she had gone to the canteen.

7. if \ not buy \ hot dog \ not \ feel unwell If she hadn't bought the hot dog, .

8. she \ have \ better day \ if \ stay \ in bed all day!!! She would have had a better day

Exercise 5. Complete the spaces using the prompts in the brackets. e.g. My mother ... (windows/paint/brother) Answer My mother had her windows painted by her brother.

1. I went to the hairdresser's to . (hair/cut)

2. You should take your car to the mechanic to . (brakes/repair)

3. For their wedding anniversary, Mary which they ate at a large party. (big cake/make)

4. I have to , otherwise I can't work on my thesis. (computer/repair)

5. "Did John repair your roof?" "No, we that he knows." (it/do/builder)

6. We and he said it was worth over a thousand dollars. (statue/value/art expert)

7. We should before the summer begins. It's looking dirty. (pool/clean)

8. The local council want all dog owners to .. to reduce the problem of strays. (dogs/tag)
9. I broke the heel on my shoe this morning and now I need to . (it/repair)
10. After the car accident, Cynthia had to and looked as she did before. (nose/reshape/famous plastic surgeon)

Exercise 6. Put these words into the correct order to make sentences using the future continuous. Don't forget to include all punctuation!

1. be / by / will / 7pm / tomorrow / traveling / evening / ? / you
2. won't / her / I / tomorrow / arrives / train / for / be / her / waiting / . / when
3. studying / the / and / we'll / library / tonight / in / so / can / us / . / you / come / join / be
4. tomorrow / . / be / York / evening / 9pm / driving / at / I'll / through / New
5. will / fans / the / . / New / celebrating / tonight / York / be / Jets
6. you / hotel / will / time / last / as / in / be / the / staying / ? / same

Exercise 7 For each sentence, choose a variety of "used to", "be used to" or "get used to". Use the verb in the brackets to make the sentence

1. European drivers find it difficult to (drive) on the left when they visit Britain.
2. See that building there? I (go) to school there, but now it's a factory.
3. I've only been at this company a couple of months. I (still not) how they do things round here.
4. When I first arrived in this neighbourhood, I had to (live) in a house. I had always lived in apartment buildings.
5. Working till 10pm isn't a problem. I (finish) late. I did it in my last job too.
6. I can't believe they are going to build an airport just two miles from our new house! I will (never) all that noise! What a nightmare.
7. His father (smoke) twenty cigars a day - now he doesn't smoke at all!
8. Whenever all my friends went to discos, I (never go) with them, but now I enjoy it.
9. I (drive) as I have had my driving licence almost a year now.
10. When Max went to live in Italy, he (live) there very quickly. He's a very open minded person.

Exercise 8. Match each sentence with a letter for the sentence that summarizes the situation best using 'should', 'shouldn't', 'have to' or 'didn't have to'

A I had to take one.	1. John was in the building after 10pm. The rules state "nobody in building after 9pm."
B He shouldn't have been.	2. We expected to pay \$5 to enter the park. We got into the park for free. We were surprised.

C We didn't have to pay.	3. My biology exam was very hard. It was necessary to study a lot for it.
D You should have told me.	4. You never told me it was Hilary's birthday yesterday. She's angry at me because I forgot.
E I had to study a lot.	5. You got me a very expensive Christmas gift. That wasn't necessary.
F He didn't have to pay.	6. Phil was fired because he discussed his company's policies with a person from another company.
G You shouldn't have.	7. It was raining when I left the house yesterday. For that reason, I took an umbrella.
H He shouldn't have done it.	8. Coming from a rich family, Phil Harman was able to travel around the world after university. His family paid for everything.

Exercise 9. Read through this short article about the final Peanuts cartoon, the cartoon where Snoopy the dog appears. Use ONE word to fill each gap

A 50-year tradition comes to end on Sunday with the last ... Peanuts, the world's most famous comic strip.

More than 2,600 newspapers around the world will never quite ... the same now that Charles Schulz, the American cartoonist who has drawn the strip every day since 1950, retires to concentrate his fight against cancer.

The final cartoon begins with Charlie Brown saying on phone "no, I think he's writing". The next picture shows Snoopy in familiar pose hunched the typewriter on top of his kennel.

'Dear friends', Snoopy writes, leading on to a farewell letter from Mr Schulz in the 77-year-old cartoonist thanks his millions of fans for their "wonderful support and love" and says the cartoon was the fulfillment of his childhood ambition.

Exercise 10. Insert Articles

The moment you arrive in Most you're hit by ... smog. You can feel it in ... back of your throat and taste ... sulphur in the air.

On the edge of town lies ... huge industrial complex, ... vast mill of smokestacks and cooling towers, it's one of sources of the smog. Most itself hasn't changed much since the end of Communism. There are ... few more shops with few more goods for sale. But there's still bleak, lifeless feel to the place. ... industrial workers are housed in rows of identical apartment blocks and do their shopping in ... colourless, concrete town centre.

The surrounding countryside has, over ... years, been transformed into ... scarred landscape of ... huge open-cast mines. From them comes ... lignite, the brown coal which is ... main source of cheap fuel here, as well as the cause of much of the pollution. When burnt it gives off thick sulphur fumes.

... price of industrial growth here has been great...and the people of Most are still living with its consequences. In the children's ward of the local hospital, Dr. Jiri Biolek, deals with the effects of the pollution on city's young. Sitting in his spartan office, he remembers the day back in the autumn of 1981 when the pollution was so bad that all leaves fell off the trees overnight. few days later there was an outbreak of pneumonia in the town. The "authorities of the time", as Dr. Biolek calls them, told hospital to say the illnesses had been caused by virus.

Exercise 11. Insert Prepositions

1. We are related ... marriage . He is my wife's brother.
2. I didn't quite like him ... first, but then we got along together.
3. I won't eat any chocolate because I'm ... a diet.
4. My daughter is addicted ... cigarettes She is a heavy smoker.
5. You should be ashamed ... yourself for treating her like that.
6. She was grateful ... him for the help he gave her.
7. He failed his driving test a few times, however, ... the end, he passed.
8. I'm afraid the manager is not here. He is in France business this week.
9. There was a large sign that said the house was ... sale.
10. They travelled to Greece ... air.
11. She was angry ... her boss for making her work through the weekend
12. Many things have changed. ... example, almost all families have two cars.
13. He was never good ... football, so we were surprised when they signed him up.
14. We felt sorry ... her because of the death of her youngest son.

Exercise 12. Use correct tenses

1. Last Saturday, my father ... that his dinner suit was too small, so now he ... a strict diet. (discover, follow)
2. Helen ... her driving test five times so far without success, but she ... yet. (take, give up)
3. Most of the time, John and his friends ... football matches at their local coffee, but this Saturday, they ... to the stadium, and so they're all very excited. (watch, go)
4. Kate ... a vegetarian for eleven years now, and she ... meat at all during this time. (be, eat)
5. Last year, Richard ... his bicycle to work every day, but he ... the bus since the accident. (ride, take)

6. I ... glasses when I was younger, but now I ... contact lenses. (wear, have)
7. About a month ago, I ... a brochure about your hotel, but I ... it yet. (request, receive)
8. The conditions in our office ... more and more unbearable, so quite often recently I ... quitting it and looking for a new job. (get, consider)
9. Because I ... a long way from my work, I ... lots of time going to and from work. (waste, live)
10. In the USA, the twenty largest newspaper chains ... for almost half of the circulation, reflecting a trend that ... in the 1970s. (account, start)
11. Clean snow ... as much as 87 per cent of the sunlight that ... on it. (reflect, shine)
12. Because you ... half of the ingredients as I ... dinner, you probably aren't hungry at all now. (eat, prepare)

Exercise 13. Make necessary transformations

1. Phoebe was surprised to be offered a place on the course. The offer of a place on the course (came) Phoebe.
2. I can't deny that I was embarrassed to be given the award. There's (no) embarrassment at being given the award.
3. I think Anita must have gone on a diet recently because she's quite slim now. It looks as (has) dieting because she's quite slim now.
4. Delia said that she would no longer tolerate her colleagues being rude. 'I am not willing (put) from my colleagues any longer, ' said Delia.
5. It's difficult to know what my reaction would have been in that situation. I'm not (how) in that situation.
6. Do you mind if I come over to see you later? Do you (objection) coming over to see you later?

Exercise 14. Correct mistakes if any

1. There is very cold in the summer.
2. According to me, that's true.
3. If I will be late, I'll call you.
4. I am used to wake up early on weekdays.
5. She sat in the end of the table.
6. I stopped to smoke cigarettes because it was unhealthy.
7. It is very good weather.
8. I need to concentrate myself on my homework.
9. Did you ever read the book "Moby Dick?"
10. Brian is so stupid man.

Exercise 15. Put these words into the correct order to make sentences with quantifier expressions. Don't forget to include all punctuation!

1. get / in / manages / to / hour / five / who / complete / under / test / bonus / a / anyone / points / an / will / the / .
2. the / is / ocean / of / totally / much / floor / unexplored / .
3. on / been / wasted / great / a / . / has / reports / time / deal / meaningless / of
4. / time / reason / still / panic / deadline / the / to / before / so / have / of / we / plenty / no / there's
5. hand / plane / be / onto / the / you / taking / a / lot / luggage / of / will / ?
6. needs / can / much / . / residents' / the / regain / done / to / before / be / confidence / we
7. of / on / none / . / time / arrived / the / at / children / school
8. flood / in / the / books / these / damaged / been / have / . / all

Exercise 16. Write in the best word out of the choices given to go into each of these spaces

1. The new supermarket is so much cheaper than the one in John Street. ..., they do free home deliveries too.

However On the whole Furthermore

2. Australia has some beautiful parts of the country... , they also have a lot of dangerous animals.

Though However Despite

3. ... the high risk involved, many scientists chase tornadoes so they can study them more closely.

But Though Despite

4. ... television can be educational, I think it's better to read a book.

On the other hand Even though However

5. So you can see there are both advantages and disadvantages of the new system for organising the timetable ..., I would say it would be better to stick with the current system.

On the whole And Lastly

6. ... the rain and the high winds, they never went camping.

Because Due to Despite

7. This new computer has a better monitor. Its memory is twice as large as the current one and we can use the internet with it. ... its software will make our job so much easier.

Finally However In short

8. Saline speaks in class when we are trying to work. She shouts out to other students when it is not necessary and when she does ask me a question, it is doubtlessly a stupid one just to get some attention. ... she is a very disruptive presence in the class. I'm sorry Mr. Philicott.

Furthermore And In short

Exercise 17. Look at this letter of complaint that Daniel writes to the owner of a hotel company. For each space, write the correct relative pronoun. If no relative pronoun is required, simply put "x" as the answer

Dear Mr. Jeffries,

I want to complain about the hotel (1) I stayed last week, one of your company's hotels. I spent nearly \$200 on the hotel, (2) I assumed would guarantee me some level of quality. That is a mistake (3) I won't be making again!

This was going to be a second honeymoon for my wife and I, which I think you can understand the importance of. The first problem we encountered was finding the place. The address given on your website was wrong. I asked someone who told me there were always tourists who were lost in the area. Please correct the address immediately to prevent other situations such as (4) we suffered.

On arriving at the hotel, which had taken more than an hour, we were informed (5) we didn't have a reservation. Another twenty minutes passed before the receptionist, (6) name I cannot recall, found our e-mail and told us "there was an administrative error" by (7) I presume she means "the hotel is run like a circus".

We were finally shown to the room by a porter (8) was wearing a very dirty T-shirt. It was cold and there was a wind coming under the door, which all made my wife feel very upset.

I would like at the very least a refund of the money we spent so foolishly by staying in your hotel. I would also appreciate an honest explanation of why we had to tolerate such treatment during a stay that was supposed to be relaxing.

Regards

Daniel Marston

Exercise 18. Put these words into the correct order to make sentences containing different gerund/infinitive verb patters. Don't forget to include all punctuation!

1. much / dread / this / of / all / will / to / how / I / think / . / cost

2. you / ? / apartment / before / to / remember / did / the / you / left / heater / turn / on / the

3. remember / remember / I / . / to / anything / saying / but / seeing / I / Kane, / him / don't

4. keen / I'm / not / into / enjoy / I / them / . / but / watching / movies / , / made / reading / on / novels

5. you'll / or / so / up / making / much / baby / wake / stop / noise / . / the

6. advisor / a / career / some / suggest / I / give / . / to / she'll / suggestions / speak / you / going / and / to

7. we / so / be / friend / stopped / late / hadn't / ! / if / wouldn't / , / we / your / to / speak / to

8. try / . / getting / sleeping / you / if / those / more / headaches / keep / ,

Exercise 19. Read this politician's letter to the people living in the local area. Write ONE word for each space

I wanted to write a few words to all of you (1) explain my decision to oppose the construction of another oil power station in our area. So much research has been carried out in (2) to show how dangerous these power stations are to our environment. (3), incredibly, the plan to build more remains.

My opponents have said my opposition puts local jobs at risk. (4), I would say that continuing with the construction of this power station puts lives at risk, and not only local ones. Rising sea levels and global warming (5) to our endless emissions of carbon dioxide put us all in danger.

(6) my party has decided not to oppose this power station, I have been left with no alternative but to resign from my party. This is a bigger cause than any minor party dispute. Because (7) this, I will be standing as an independent candidate next year.

Revision test

1. He was advised not to discontinue this medicine ... this might bring a recurrence of the complaint.

A) so that B) despite C) until D) as E) due to

2. The patient was not satisfied ... the treatment he received.

A) on B) for C) of D) from E) with

3. Be sure ... take a look ... the article on infant mortality rates.

A) in / of B) to / at C) of / for D) for / up E) by / from

4. AIDS is a disease ... has given rise to much speculation.

A) whom B) whose C) what D) which E) who

5. A lot of people want to become surgeons, but ... make the grade.

A) few B) not much C) very little D) any E) all

6. A drug of this kind is ... dangerous to be sold without a prescription.

A) as B) just C) too D) so E) enough

7. Acetic acid is used as a food ... and flavouring material, and also in the manufacture of white lead.

A) preservative B) decay C) absorption D) solution E) process

8. Researchers disagree ... whether a large ocean ever existed on Mars, but one thing is certain: Martian geology is turning ... to be strange and complex.

A) of / round B) in / over C) for / up D) on / out E) about / in

9. Species become endangered and even extinct ... a variety of reasons, many of which are related ... human activities.

A) within / of B) for / to C) with / for D) in / with E) over / through

10. Some scientists ... us that the thermal blanket around the globe ... the average temperature of the earth to rise.

A) were warning / has caused B) have been warning / was causing C) have warned / may cause D) have warned / may caused E) warn / will have caused

11. A theory ... only when a hypothesis ... by consistent results from many observations or experiments.

A) may have been developed / was being supported B) can be developed / has been supported C) will be developed / was supported D) has been developed / had been supported E) had been developed / might have been supported

12. If transport costs ... into consideration at the outset, the plant ... far from its present site.

A) will be taken / are being built B) were taken / had been built C) have been taken / have been built D) were being taken / will be built E) had been taken / would have been built

13. The first laser ... in 1960 by Maiman almost half a century after the publication of Einstein's theory of radiation which ... the possibility of laser operation.

A) has been demonstrated / had shown B) had been demonstrated / showed C) was demonstrated / showed D) demonstrates / was shown E) was being demonstrated / shows

14. The advent of nuclear power... the trend to use water-power on a large scale, and hydroelectric installations ... in all industrial countries with water power potential.

A) has not halted / are being built B) did not halt / are built C) would not halt / will be built D) will not halt / were being built E) had not halted / would be built

15. ... many diverse animal forms exist ... exceptions can be found to almost any definition of an animal.

A) So / as B) As / as C) Whether / so D) So / that E) Neither / nor

REFERENCES

1. Літінська О. Техніка запам'ятовування «інтервальне повторення» у викладанні японської мови. Мовні і концептуальні картини світу. 2017. Вип. 60. С. 145-153
2. Черноватий Л.М. Практична граматики англійської мови. Винниця, Нова книга, 2009.
3. Ausubel D. P., Youssef M. The Effect of Spaced Repetition on Meaningful Retention. *Journal of General Psychology*. 1965. Vol. 73 (1). P. 147-150
4. *Language Practice Intermediate English Grammar and Vocabulary*. Macmillan, 2003.
5. Murphy R. *English Grammar in Use (a self-study reference and practice book for intermediate students)*. Cambridge University Press, 2005.
6. Norihiko Kitao. A Study of Spacing Effect in Free Recall of Sentences: on full processing hypothesis / Norihiko Kitao // *Japanese Journal of Psychology*. – 1992. – Vol. 63 (2). – P. 100-106.

Навчальне видання

**О. І. Панченко, П. В. Горелова, М. Л. Вотінцева, І. В. Муляр,
К. Ю. Шевчик**

**Граматика англійської мови: поглиблене вивчення (для
інтервального дистанційного навчання)**

Навчальний посібник